THE EXCAVATIONS AT
KAUSĀMBĪ
(1957-59)
The Defences and the Śyenaciti of the Puruṣamedha

By
G. R. SHARMA
Head of the Department, Ancient History
Culture & Archaeology
and
Director, Kauśāmbī Expedition, University of Allahabad

ALLAHABAD-1960
PREFACE

Field Archaeology is one of the latest arrivals in the portals of the Indian universities. It needed, indeed, the vision of a Director General of Archaeology of a stature no less than that of Sir Mortimer Wheeler to realise that ‘archaeology, like other sciences, can flourish only on a basis of healthy emulation and informed criticism’ and, as a corollary, ‘the Indian universities, like other universities throughout the world, must enter the field and join the fray.’ It was in pursuance of this policy that he permitted the University of Allahabad to conduct the excavations at Kausambi. His successors have not only maintained this tradition but have also further extended the bounds of co-operation between the Union Department of Archaeology on the one hand, and the universities and other institutions engaged in field archaeology on the other. Undoubtedly, the remarkable advancement of Indian archaeology, during the last decade, is largely due to this liberal policy.

I owe the deepest and the foremost debt to my teachers Pt. K. Chattopadhyaya, who initiated me in the Vedic studies and Dr. (now Sir) Mortimer Wheeler from whom I had my first lessons in field archaeology.

In the archaeological enterprise of the University, I have received help from numerous persons, both within and outside the university. To Dr. Sampurnanand, Chief Minister of U.P., I am grateful for the personal interest he has always taken in this matter. I gratefully acknowledge the help I received at various stages from the Vice-Chancellors of the University—Dr. Amara Natha Jha, Dr. Tara Chand, Dr. D. R. Bhattacharya, Prof. A. C. Banerji and Sri B. N. Jha; from the Chairmen, University Grants Committee, U.P.—Dr. H. N Kunzru and Dr. Sita Ram; and from the Secretary of the Committee, Sri Parmisand. I am also obliged for the help I received in the initial stages of the organisation of excavation work from Dr. R. P. Tripathi, Dr. Ishwari Prasad, Pt. K. Chattopadhyaya, Pt. Braj Mohan Vyas, Dr. Gorakh Prasad, Sri N. N. Ghosh, Dr. G. C. Pande, Sri J. S. Negi and Sri D. H. Rao.

The present report sets out the results of the excavations of the defences at Kausambi conducted during 1957-59. It has been divided into two parts,
part one being largely archaeological in nature, and part two devoted to a critical discussion of the original literary data pertaining to the Śyenaciti and the Puruṣa-medha. An attempt has been made here at a critical, comparative and detailed study of these institutions in their evolutorial sequence with special reference to the different schools and their practices. This wading through the literary sources—the Sarīhitās, Brāhmaṇas, Śūtras etc.—was highly essential for the correct and accurate indentification of the sacrificial altar discovered in these excavations.

With the exception of painted N. B. P. Ware, pottery of Periods III and IV has not been included in the report. Nor is there any elaborate discussion on the terracotta figurines, as these have already been fully discussed in my earlier report being published in the form of a Memoir by the Union Department of Archaeology. I hope the Manager of Publications, Government of India, will expedite its publication which is long overdue.

By its very nature, an archaeological enterprise requires the discipline of organised team-work on a large scale. I am deeply obliged to my former pupils, and at present colleagues, Dr. B. N. S. Yadava, Dr. S. N. Roy, Sri R. C. Tripathi and Sri Lakṣmi Narain Tiwari (now Asstt. Prof., Sanskrit University, Varanasi) for the invaluable help I have received in the preparation and publication of this work. I am much beholden to my friend and colleague, Sri A. D. Pant of the Politics Department, who went through the manuscript and offered valuable suggestions.

The publication of this report is, in a very large measure, due to the zeal and co-operation I have received from the members of the Archaeological Expedition—photographer Sri S. K. Shukla, surveyors and draftsmen, Sri Hasan Akhtar, Sri G. K. Kapoor, Sri H. N. Kar and pottery assistant Sri Braj Behari Misra. Sri Shukla also supervised the preparation and printing of the illustrations. My thanks are also due to Sri R. K. Varma and Sri Dhaneshwar Mandal who have read the proof and prepared the index.

I must also express my thankfulness to my colleagues in the department who shouldered the burden of teaching during my absence in connection with excavation work. To the inhabitants of Kausāmbe also I extend my thanks for their ceaseless co-operation.

To Sri A. Ghosh, Director General of Archaeology, I am specially obliged
for sending me a type-script of his lecture on the explorations in the Sarasvatī and Drśadvatī Valley, delivered at the Indian History Congress, Jaipur; and for sending me the blocks of Pl. nos. 5, 13, 16 A, 18 A, 21 A, 26 B, 32 B, 33 A, 33 B, and 36.

To Dr. H. D. Sankalia, Dr. S. B. Deo, Sri S. R. Rao and Sri P. P. Pandya, I am indebted for valuable informations concerning pottery from Navdatoli, Rangpur and other Western Indian sites; to Dr. B. B. Lal, for the report on plaster; to Dr. N. K. Bose, Director of the Department of Anthropology, Government of India, for deputing Sri B. C. Dutta, one of his assistants, who helped me in the excavation of the skeletal material from the Śyenaciti; and to Sri Bhola Nath, Zoologist, Zoological Survey, for the identification of some bones.

I am extremely thankful to the present Vice-Chancellor Dr. Sri Ranjan and Prof. S. C. Deb and Dr. B. P. Saksena, the Deans during this period, Sri K. L. Govil and Sri R. C. Sharma, the then Registrar and Accounts Officer respectively, for the co-operation and help they extended to me.

My thanks are also due to the officers of the Allahabad District, and specially to the then District Magistrate Sri O. N. Misra from whom I received fullest co-operation.

Last but not the least, I am grateful to Sri Sitaram Gunthey, Manager, Sri Zalim Singh and other workers of the Sammelan Mudranalaya for taking personal and unremitting interest in the printing of this work; and to the Saraswati Block Works, Allahabad, for the arduous task of preparing the blocks.

At the end, I must add that the publication of this report has been made possible on account of the grant received for the purpose from the U. G. C. and the Department of Cultural Affairs and Scientific Research, Government of U.P.

University of Allahabad
Aśāḍha Śaka 1882
July 1960

G. R. S.
CONTENTS

PART ONE

CHAPTER ONE

INTRODUCTION

Review of the Recent Discoveries in India of the Indus Civilisation 3
Painted Grey Ware and its Relation with the Indus Civilisation 5
Evidence from Kausāmbi 6
Evidence of Pottery and Contacts of Kausāmbi with Navdatoli and Western Indian Sites 6
Evidence of Philology 7
Correspondence between Archaeological and Linguistic Data 9
Aryan Expansion in the Central Gangetic Valley, in the Deccan and in the South 10
Evidence of the Kṛṣṇa Yajurveda School 10
New Light on the Aryan Immigration into India 11
Literary Evidence of the Growth of Cities in the Gangetic Valley 12
Character of the Early Culture of Kausāmbi 13
The Early Town—An Iron Age Town 13
Material Evidence of Foreign Invasions in the Gangetic Valley 14
The Bactrian Greeks 14
The Śaka-Kuśāṇa 15
The Hūṇas 15

CHAPTER TWO

STRATIGRAPHY AND CHRONOLOGY

A. Stratigraphy
   Cultural Divisions 17
B. Chronology
   Evidence of Coins 19
   Seals 20
   Evidence of Terracotta Figurines 20
   Evidence of Arrow-heads 21

CHAPTER THREE

LAY-OUT OF THE EXCAVATED AREA

Kausāmbi in Literature 25
A Brief History of the Earlier Excavations 25
Objectives of The Present Excavations
Pre-Defence Structures
Beginning of the Defences
Rampart 1 and Revetment 1
Road, Moat, Subsidiary Rampart and Raising of the Passage
Subsidiary Rampart 1
Raising of the Passage Level
Rampart 2 and Revetment 2
End of Rampart 2
Rampart 3 and Revetment 3
Rampart 4
Rampart 5
Post-Rampart
Moat and Roads
The Moat
Roads
Road 1
Road 2
Road 3
Road 4
Road 5
New Light on Fortification
The Evolution and History of Bricks

CHAPTER FOUR

TOOLS AND WEAPONS
Arrow-heads—Iron
Arrow-heads—Ivory, Bone etc.
Arrow-heads in Literature
Spears and Javelins
Miscellaneous Iron Objects
Arrow-heads—Ivory and Bone
Type A—Long point, circular cross-section
Type B—Socketed
Type C—Double-Grooved
Type D—Bud-Shaped
Type E—Irregular Rectangular Cross-section
Arrow-heads—Iron
Rhombic cross-section
Square cross-section
Rectangular cross-section
Circular cross-section
Socketed Arrow-heads
CHAPTER FIVE

POTTERY

Period I

Class I

Group IA
Group IB
Group 2

Period II

Class 2

Period III

Class 3

Period IV

Class 4

Red Ware

Bowls
Dishes
Pans (Karāhās)
Lid
Beakers
Dish-on-stand
Basins
Vessels
Handi (Cooking-Vessels)
Black-and-Red Ware

Grey Ware

Bowls
Dishes

Painted Grey Ware

Painted Black-and-Red Ware

Painted Red Ware

Incised Red Ware

Inscribed Pottery

Painted and Incised N. B. P. Ware
CHAPTER SIX

TERRACOTTA FIGURINES

Early Hand-Made
Mould-Made
Hand-Made and Hollow Cylindrical Body

CHAPTER SEVEN

COINS AND SEALS

Coins
I—Punch-marked
  Type IA—Silver
  Type IB—Copper
II—Uninscribed Cast Coins—Copper
  Type IIA—Square
  Type IIB—Circular
  Type IIC—Mythical animal (Lanky bull ?)
  Type IID—Tiny Coins
III—Inscribed Cast Coins—Copper
  Type IIIA—Mitra Coins
  Type IIIB—Magha Coins
Sealings

CHAPTER EIGHT

THE ŚVENACITI OF THE PURUŚAMEDHA

I. The Archaeological Evidence of the Altar

Situation
General Lay-out and Shape
The Initial Stages of Construction
Evidence of the Earliest Rite Per-formed in connection with the Building of the Altar
Piling of Vedikā No. 4
The Mound within the Area of the Body
The Packing below the Tail and the Wings
Levelling of the Pit
Dimensions of the Altar
The Body
Formation of the Right Wing
The Left Wing
The Remaining Parts of the Altar
Layer I
### Pages

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Layer</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I.</td>
<td>The Kankar-Nodule</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Offering-Stand</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Terracotta Female Figurine</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bricks</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Other Special Bricks</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bones</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Layer II</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Layer III</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bones</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Skull No. 1</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Layers IV and V</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II.</td>
<td>The Literary Data</td>
<td>97-118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Agnicayana</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Agnicayana as an Evolving Institution</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Social Factors</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Fundamental Common Elements</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Differences and Variations in the Practices of the Two Major Schools</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mutual Influences of the Two Schools</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Antiquity and Origin of the Rite</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ideas and Tendencies responsible for the Emergence of this Rite</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Tradition of the Agnicayana</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Purushamedha</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Evolution of the Purushamedha</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Schoolwise Differences</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Antiquity and Origin of the Purushamedha</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Continuity of the Purushamedha Tradition in later Time</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Human Sacrifice (General)</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Human Sacrifice in the Vedic Ritual</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Evidence and Role of Human Sacrifice in the Religion of other Indo-Aryan Peoples</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Tendency of Substitution</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Views of Scholars on Human sacrifice in the Vedic Ritual examined</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III.</td>
<td>Correlation of the Archaeological and Literary Evidence</td>
<td>118-126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Initial stages of Construction</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Altar is a Śyenaciti</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Layer I</td>
<td>The Kankar Nodule (Svayamātrā)</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Fire-Pan (Ukhā)</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Terracotta Female Figurine</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Iron Model of a Snake</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Bones</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Tortoise</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Bricks</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Layer II</td>
<td></td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Layer III</td>
<td></td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Bricks</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Skeletal Material in Layer III
Layers IV and V
The Sadas
Association of this Altar with the Tattiriya School of the Kṛṣṇa Yajurveda
It was the Altar of the Puruṣamedha

PART TWO

CHAPTER NINE

THE AGNICAYANA

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Introduction</th>
<th>129</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Types of the Agniciti</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Suparnaciti or the Śyenaciti—the most Important Type</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Significance of the Agnicayana</td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Importance of the Agnicayana</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Object of the Śyenaciti</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Śyenaciti not the same as the Śyenayāga</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shape and Size of the Śyenaciti</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Sacrifice of the Five Victims</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Making of the Ukhā (the Fire-Pan)</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Asādha</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fumigation of the Ukhā and its Saṃskāra</td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Making of the Bricks</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agni-Upādhāna and Agnidhāraṇa</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Building of the Gārhapatya Hearth</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preparation of the Ground for the Fire Altar</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Uttaravedi</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The First Layer</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Common Bricks of the Two Schools, their Numbers and Placing</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Some Important Bricks and their Significance</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Placing of the Ukhā</td>
<td>167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Placing of the Victims’ Heads</td>
<td>167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Removal of Distress</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Placing of the Kūrma</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Placing of the Head of a Snake</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Placing of Bricks according to the Š.B.</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reference to Bones in the First Layer</td>
<td>171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Second Layer</td>
<td>172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bricks</td>
<td>172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Placing of the Special Bricks according to the Š.B.</td>
<td>173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Significance of the Special Bricks of the Second Layer</td>
<td>173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Evidence of Bones and Animals</td>
<td>174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Third Layer</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bricks</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Placing of the Bricks 177
Significance of some Special Bricks 178
References to Bones in the Third Layer 179

The Fourth Layer 179
Bricks 179
Placing of the Bricks of the Fourth Layer 180
Significance of some Special Bricks 181
Reference to the Bones and Parts of the Human Body 182

The Fifth Layer 183
Bricks 183
Placing of Bricks 186
Significance of some Special Bricks 187
Reference to Bones 187

The Satarudriya and other Ceremonies 188

CHAPTER TEN

THE PURUŚAMEDHA 190-205
The Meaning and Nature of the Puruśamedha 190
Significance and Objects 190
Main Constituents of the Puruśamedha 191
The Preliminary Rites 191
The Main Rites of the Sacrifice 193
Release and Slaughter of the Human Victims on the Central Day 194
Sacrifice of Eleven Barren Cows 197
The Main Rites according to Śaṅkhāyana and Vaiśeṣika furnishing an undisputed Evidence of Human Sacrifice 197

The Dakṣīṇā 198
The Life of the Sacrificer after the Performance of the Puruśamedha 199
Evidence of the Puruśamedha in Buddhist Literature 199
The Suttanipāta 200
Buddhaghoṣa 200
The Evidence of the Kaṇḍahāla Jātaka 202
Evidence of the Puruśamedha in Jain Literature 203
Reference to the Puruśamedha in non-Ritualistic Hindu Texts 204
Epigraphic Evidence of the Puruśamedha 205

Select Bibliography 207-210
Index 211-225
ILLUSTRATIONS

PLATES

1. Facsimile of the observations of the Prime Minister.
2. The Prime Minister Sri Jawaharlal Nehru at the site: Sri Lal Bahadur Shastri on the left.
3. The Governor of Uttar Pradesh, Sri V. V. Giri at the site.
4. Sequence of Cultures.
5. Kauśāmbi from the air.
7. Defences: eastern wing.
9. Tower at the north-eastern corner of the defences.
10. Excavations of the tower at the north-eastern corner of the defences.
11. The western gateway.
13. Revetment 1 of the defences.
14. Revetment 1 of the defences, original pavement and the blocking of the passage.
15. A. Weep-holes in Revetment 1.
   B. U lined pit below weep-hole in Revetment 1.
16. A. Original pavement and blocking of the passage through the defences.
   B. Plaster over Revetment 1.
17. Repair of Revetment 1.
18. A. Revetment 1 and its repair (collapsed).
   B. Mud-blocks over ancient humus.
19. Revetments 2 and 3 of the defences.
20. Curved wall and the enclosed passage.
   B. Man-hole in the passage.
22. A. Slits in the walls of the passage.
   B. Stair 1.
23. Guard-rooms and Stair 2: roads and watch-tower in the background.
24. Flank-walls and blockings of the passages through the guard-rooms.
25. Roads.
26. A. Section across the moat, looking south-west.
   B. Section across the moat, looking south-east.
27. A. Śyenaciti: right wing with its three parts, the scale demarcating the wing from the body.  
B. Section across the Śyenaciti.
28. Śyenaciti: head in the foreground, horizontal scale demarcating the body from the wing.  
29. Section across the Śyenaciti: vertical scale against Uttaravedi, two-foot scale against Śvayamātṛṇā and one-foot scale against tortoise-shell.  
30. A. Section across Śyenaciti: scale against Uttaravedi.  
B. Śyenaciti: Vedika 4–Gārhapatya.
31. A. Śyenaciti: bone of Zebu (humped cattle) on pot-scherds representing the initial rite Vaisvānara-Paśupuroḍāsa.  
B. The Aśādhā with the portrayal of human sacrifice.
32. A. The Ukhā.  
B. Śvayamātṛṇā within a ring of Prāṇabhṛt bricks in the first layer.
33. A. Śyenaciti: human skull on the tail in the foreground.  
B. Human skull on the tail of the Śyenaciti.
34. A. Śyenaciti: bones of elephant and domestic buffalo in the first layer.  
B. Śyenaciti : bones in the first layer.
35. A. Śyenaciti : the jaw of ass and bone of goat in the first layer.  
B. Śyenaciti : right ramus mandible with third molar tooth of Bos Bubalis (buffalo) in the centre of the second layer.
36. A. Śyenaciti : bones in the third layer.  
B. Śyenaciti : human bones in the third layer.
37. A. Śyenaciti : human skull in the third layer.  
B. Śyenaciti : human bone in the third layer.
38. A. Śyenaciti : human jaw in the third layer.  
B. Śyenaciti : human jaw in the fourth layer.
42. Spears, javelins and miscellaneous iron antiquities.
43. Miscellaneous iron antiquities.
44. Terracotta figurines : early hand-made type.
45. Terracotta figurines : mould-made.
46. Terracotta figurines : mould-made.
47. Terracotta figurines : late hand-made.
48. Coins : punch-marked and uninscribed cast.
49. Coins: inscribed cast and Sealings.
50. Painted Grey Ware.
51. Painted Black-and-Red Ware.
52. Painted Red Ware.
53. Incised Red Ware.
54. Painted Black-and-Red Ware and inscribed pottery.
55. Painted and incised N. B. P. Ware.

FIGURES

1. Map of India showing position of Kauśāmbī.
2. Plan of the defences.
3. Section across the defences.
4. Section across Guard-rooms.
7. Spears, javelins and miscellaneous iron antiquities.
8. Miscellaneous iron antiquities.
9. Red Ware.
10. Red Ware.
11. Red Ware.
12. Red and Black-and-Red Ware.
13. Grey Ware.
14. Painted Grey Ware.
15. Painted and incised N.B.P. Ware.
16. The schematic plan of the Śyenaciti of the Puruṣamedha.
17. Section across Śyenaciti.
18. Śyenaciti: Ukhā, pot placed with human skull on the tail, terracotta figurine—Sinivāli.
    and iron model of snake.
ABBREVIATIONS

A. B. Aitareya Brāhmaṇa.
A. I. N. Lectures on Ancient Indian Numismatics (Bhandarkar).
A. N. Aṅguttara Nikāya.
Āp. Āpastamba Śrauta Sūtra.
Āp. Śulba. Āpastamba Śulba Sūtra.
Āśv. Śr. Āśvalāyana Śrauta Sūtra.
A. V. Atharva-veda.
Baud. Śr. Baudhāyana Śrauta Sūtra.
Baudhāyana Śulba. Baudhāyana Śulba Sūtra.
Bhāg. P. Bhāgavata Purāṇa.
C. A. I. Coins of Ancient India (Cunningham).
C. H. I. Cambridge History of India.
E. R. E. Encyclopaedia of Religion and Ethics.
Fig. Figure.
Fl. Floor.
Gop. B. Gopatha Brāhmaṇa.
K. S. Kāṭhaka Saṁhitā.
K. S. B. Brāhmaṇa portion of the Kāṭhaka Saṁhitā.
KSB Kauśāṃbi.
Kap. S. Kapiḍhala-Kaṭha-Saṁhitā.
Kāṭ. Śr. Kāṭiyāyana Śrauta Sūtra.
Kh. N. Khuddaka Nikāya.
Lāṭ. Śr. Laṭāyana Śrauta Sūtra.
L. S. I. Linguistic Survey of India.
M. B. Mahābhārata.
Manu. Manusmṛti.
M. S. Maitrāyaṇi Saṁhitā.
M. S. B. Brāhmaṇa portion of the Maitrāyaṇi Saṁhitā.
Maitrāyaṇīya Śulba. Maitrāyaṇīya Śulba Sūtra.
Mānavā Śulka. Mānavā Śulka Sūtra.
N.B.P. Northern Black Polished (Ware).
NVS Nevasa.
NVNT Navdatoli.
P.G. Ware Painted Grey Ware.
Pl. Plate.
P.T.S. Pāli Text Society.
RGP Rangpur.
R.V. Rgveda.
Ś.B. Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa.
S.B.E. Sacred Books of the East.
Ṣaḍ.B. Śaḍvimaṇa Brāhmaṇa.
S.O.B. Studies in the Origins of Buddhism (Pande).
Śāṅk.Śr. Śāṅkhāyana Śrauta Sūtra.
Śat.Śr. Satyāśaṅkha Śrauta Sūtra.
Select Ins. Select Inscriptions (Sircar).
Sn. Suttanipāta.
S.N. Samyutta Nikāya.
SP. Structural Period.
T.B. Taittiriya Brāhmaṇa.
T.S. Taittiriya Saṁhitā.
T.S.B. Brāhmaṇa portion of the Taittiriya Saṁhitā.
Vaik.Śr. Vaiśakhana Śrauta Sūtra.
Vait.Śr. Vaiṭāna Śrauta Sūtra.
Varāha Śulka. Varāha Śulka Sūtra.
V.S. Vājasaneya Saṁhitā.
Vāyu P. Vāyu Purāṇa.
V.T. Yajurveda.

JOURNALS

A.I. Ancient India.
I.A. Indian Archaeology—A Review.
J.N.S.I. Journal of the Numismatic Society of India.
THE EXCAVATIONS AT KAUSĀMBĪ
(1957–59)
Last December I visited the Karanakti museum at The University. I was pleased and a little surprised to see a noteworthy collection. Today I visited the Karanakti site itself, about which I had heard a great deal in many years but which I had never visited previously. It was evident even from a rapid view that this is a site of great importance from both historical and archaeological points of view. Also that the work being done there is systematic and expert. I am glad that the attached University is in charge of it and I congratulate it.

James Church Jahn
April 7th, 1859
The Prime Minister Sri Jawaharlal Nehru at the site: Sri Lal Bahadur Shastri on the left.
PART ONE
Fig. 1

INDIA
SHOWING POSITION OF KAULŚAMI
MODERN CITIES
ANCIENT CITIES
HEIGHTS ABOVE 1500'

SCALE OF MILES
CHAPTER ONE

INTRODUCTION

Review of the Recent Discoveries in India of the Indus Civilization

The urban revolution in the Indus Valley, resting upon the same fundamental ideas of organised town-life as in Egypt and Babylonia, gave birth to a civilisation the essentially Indian character of which has universally been recognised. In the field of religion, the indebtedness of Hinduism to this civilisation is obvious, as, many of the basic ideas and beliefs that constitute the very core of later Hinduism are foreign to the Vedic tradition and have their prototypes in the religion of the Indus cities.1

Indian archaeology, in the last decade, has unfolded a new chapter in the history of the Harappan culture the cities and towns of which have been discovered as far north as Rūpar, at the foot of the Simla hills, as far east as Ḍālamūṛ, on the Hīndon—a tributary of the Yamunā, in the extensive valleys of the Sarasvatī in Rajasthan and in the south-west over the entire coastal plain round the gulf of Cambay and Kāṭhiāwār. The Harappan occupations at Rūpar, Lothal, Rangpur and other sites in India came into existence at a late stage of this culture and continued long after the destruction of the main towns in the original centres in the Western Punjab (Pakistan).2 A terminal date3 round about 1500 B.C. for the Harappan cities in the Western Punjab can hardly hold good for the recently discovered Harappan settlements in the Eastern Punjab, Rajasthan, Uttar Pradesh and Western India.

Some of the recently excavated sites have also supplied evidence of a phase of Harappan culture unrepresented at Harappā and Mohenjo-daro. The

2. Wheeler, Early India and Pakistan, p. 117.
3. Piggot, Prehistoric India, pp. 140, 258.
culture which had become stagnant in its original centres underwent a rejuvenation and gradual transformation in these areas, possibly under the impact of new historical forces. At Rūpar\(^1\) the earliest occupation represented a late stage of the mature Harappan culture, whereas the later phase ‘offered certain new traditions in ceramic.’ The Indus goblet, rare in the lower levels, was almost absent in the later phase, in which terracotta cakes also became scarce. But more significant is the introduction of certain incised designs on pottery in the second phase. The earliest period at Bārā, five miles south of Rūpar, is characterised by a complete scarcity of the Indus goblet and terracotta cakes and a corresponding diversity in slips and paintings unknown to the lower levels at Rūpar, as also by the presence of new pottery-shapes having horizontal or wavy incised lines. The fifteen feet thick deposit at Bārā implies continuous occupation for centuries after the typical Harappan culture. The new ceramic tradition is not an isolated development at Bārā. Though unrecorded at Harappā and Mohenjo-daro, it is abundantly represented at the Harappan sites in Bikaner,\(^2\) which may represent the eastern variety of the Harappan culture and may have flourished at a period later than true Harappā. As Ghosh\(^3\) remarks, the Sarasvati Valley had been really a commingling of many rivers, not only geographically, but also culturally. It is symptomatic of the direction in which the Harappan culture was being modified.

In Kāthiāwār and Western India, archaeology has revealed a still more coherent and significant story of the devolution of the Harappan culture. Beginning with an initial occupation with characteristic ingredients of the Harappan culture, many of the sites in this region show influences unknown to the ceramic traditions of Harappā and Mohenjo-daro—in pottery types, colours and in painting designs. Black-and-Red Ware occurs along with the typical Harappan pottery at Lothal\(^4\), Rangpur\(^5\), Rojdi\(^6\) etc. Painting designs, similar to those from post-Harappan sites in Sind and the adjoining regions, have been noticed on the pottery of the Chalcolithic culture from Western India\(^7\). It is now becoming abundantly clear that the Harappan culture in these new regions

---

3. Lecture delivered at the Indian History Congress, Jaipur, 1951.
did not meet with a catastrophic end but was gradually assimilated by and transformed into new cultures. In Western India Harappan influences in pottery types and designs persisted in a transitional stage when other more important components of the Indus Civilisation had disappeared.

**Painted Grey Ware and its Relation with the Indus Civilisation**

Sites of the Painted Grey Ware have been discovered in the valley of the Sarasvati, in the plains of the Punjab and at Ālamgīrpura—either in close proximity of deserted settlements of the Harappan culture or directly over them. The P. G. Ware people came to the Ghaggar Valley¹ after its desertion by the Harappans. It was also significant, as Ghosh observed, that the P. G. Ware people always built their settlements by the side of Harappan mounds and not directly over them, thus 'breaking new grounds for themselves.' The excavations of Tarkhānawāla Ḍerā and Chak 86 revealed that the Harappan and Grey Ware cultures never came into contact with each other in this particular area. 'The settlements of each originated, flourished and died out in their own time, entirely independently of those of the other.'² A clay deposit separated the Harappan levels from the subsequent Grey Ware occupations.

At Rūpar and Ālamgīrpura, though the P. G. Ware settlements rest directly over the earlier Harappan settlements, there is a complete cultural hiatus between the two. The P. G. Ware people, who scrupulously avoided the deserted mounds of the Harappans in the Ghaggar Valley, were now building their houses on the old ruins of these mounds in the Northern Punjab and Western U. P.; but still they were complete strangers to urban life, to houses of baked bricks, roads and underground drains, so characteristic of the Harappan culture. This situation warrants the inference that the Harappan tradition had died out of these regions and the Harappans had been forced to move out before the advent of the P. G. Ware people. The cause that compelled them to evacuate these regions was other than the advance of the P. G. Ware people.

Archaeology, thus, unfolds two different pictures of the immediate sequel to the Indus Civilisation. In Western India it is a transformation and transmutation of the Harappan culture into successive cultures. In Western U. P., the Punjab and in

---

the Ghaggar Valley, there is no overlapping of the Harappan culture by the P. G. Ware, stratigraphically, the successor culture; even though in these regions there is evidence of the existence of the Harappan long after its disappearance in the main homeland and also of its transformation by the introduction of new pottery types and incised designs.

Evidence From Kauśāmbo

The early defences at Kauśāmbo closely recall the Harappan citadel. The mud-packed rampart revetted externally with baked bricks in the so-called English bond in alternate courses of headers and stretchers, battered back to angles of 20° to 40°, bastions at intervals, rectangular towers and underground passage built on corbelled arch, are significant features of architecture at Kauśāmbo with prototypes for each one of them in Harappan architecture. The very idea of town life was so far unknown in the Gangetic Valley. The defences show that in the first centuries of the first millennium B.C. Kauśāmbo developed as a town fully equipped for its protection by the magnificent defences built on the Harappan pattern. Evidently, this was not an achievement of the P. G. Ware culture which shows a distinct aversion to the very concept of urban life in its earlier settlements in the Ghaggar Valley, the Punjab and Western U. P. Nor can it be associated with the Red Ochre-washed Ware. It is equally significant that P. G. Ware occurs at Kauśāmbo two structural periods after the original construction of the defences. The recent discovery at Ālamgirpura (District Meerut, U. P.) has established definite evidence of the penetration of the Harappan culture in the Gaṅgā-Yamunā Doab. If the Harappans could reach the banks of the Hindon, a tributary of the Yamunā, the percolation and the survival of the Harappan influences at Kauśāmbo, only 300 miles down the Yamunā, is more than likely.

Evidence of Pottery and Contacts of Kauśāmbo with Navdatoli and Western Indian Sites

The pottery associated with the earliest defences, offers numerous links with Navdatoli and Rangpur and other sites in Kāṭhiā-vār. At Kauśāmbo, the occurrence of about 30 types analogous to those of Navdatoli, about 10 to those of Rangpur and a similar number to those of Somanātha, Mehgaon and

other Western Indian sites, is an impressive record of cultural contacts. In Navdatoli the pottery is chalcolithic and has been discovered together with certain types of painted pottery clearly pointing to an Iranian connection.¹ Pottery types at Rangpur and other Western Indian sites, similar to those at Kauśāmbī, occur in late Harappan or immediately post-Harappan context and their Harappan origin in these sites is undoubted.

The following conclusions can, therefore, be arrived at in the light of the foregoing discussion:—

(1) Kauśāmbī had a close link with Navdatoli for which radio carbon dating furnishes a date roughly from 1500 to 1100 B.C. In this period this site shows close contact with Iran, pointing to an Iranian penetration into Central India.

(2) Apart from the defences, which were built on the Harappan model, many types of pottery from Kauśāmbī are analogous to pottery types of Harappan origin in Western India.

(3) The P. G. Ware at Kauśāmbī signifying a late stage in the chronological sequence of this ware, as known from sites in Western U. P., the Punjab and Rajasthan, marks here a second cultural stage. The defences had been built two structural periods earlier than the appearance of the P. G. Ware.

Evidence of Philology

On the basis of philology Hoernle² came to the conclusion that there were two Indo-Aryan invasions of India, one preceding the other, by tribes speaking different but closely connected languages. He was of the view that at a very remote period of history North India was divided between two forms of speech designated by him as the Śaurasenī and the Māgadhī tongues respectively. Later on, these two branched off into four principal groups, northern, western, southern and eastern, each constituting a single language originally. The two principal tongues divided the country diagonally between them, the one occu-

---

1. I. A., p. 31; Sankalia, Subba Rao and Deo, op. cit., p. 249.
2. Hoernle, Comparative Grammar of the Gaudian Languages, pp. XVII-XXXIV.
pying the north-western, the other the south-eastern half. The Māgadhī tongue was older of the two and its occupation of North India preceded the development and extension of Śauraseni. Isolated characteristics of Māgadhī were also present in the west, the region of Śauraseni, pointing to its existence in the remote past up to the extreme western frontiers. Hoernle also expressed the view that 'Māgadhī, Pashtu and Kāfri were once in close connection, perhaps one language.' On the other hand, the headquarters of Śauraseni were in Western Rajputana from where it spread north-east and east pushing Māgadhī to recede more and more towards south and east, leaving, however, here and there in the deserted territories traces of its former presence. Māgadhī was separated from Pashtu and Kāfri by Śauraseni driving a wedge and cleaving them asunder and gradually pushing Māgadhī further and further towards east. All these considerations, according to Hoernle, point to the fact that 'two great emigrations of the people of the Aryan stock into India took place at different periods, both speaking essentially the same language, though in two different varieties'.

Grierson¹ who did not accept this theory in its entirety put forth the view that the Indo-Aryan 'immigration was a gradual process extending over a very long period of time and a clear distinction can be made between the languages of the earliest and of the latest immigrants.' According to him, the latter were opposed by the former in course of their onward march into the Punjab and were, thus, forced to 'go round their predecessors down the Indus Valley and thence in later times, across India to their south and ultimately behind them on the east.'

The net result of these movements, according to both these views, was the formation of two clear linguistic zones—an inner and more compact one extending from the Eastern Punjab to the confluence of the Gaṅgā and Yamunā and the other, surrounding it, from Western and Central India to the central and lower Gangetic Valley. This conclusion is based on the comparative analysis of phonetics, declension of nouns, conjugation of verbs and the general character of the early languages of these areas. The central Gangetic area round about Allahabad with its Ardha-Māgadhī represented a neutral ground between Śauraseni, the language of the inner, and Māgadhī, the language of the outer zone. Closely connected with Ardha-Māgadhī was Mahārāṣṭra, the language of Mahārāṣṭra.

This is further confirmed by the fact that Madhyadeśa or the Midland, extending, according to Manu¹ from Vinaśana, where the river Sarasvatī loses itself in the Great Desert, to Allahabad, together with some five degrees of the country farther east, became the centre of Brāhmaṇa orthodoxy and the complex sacrificial cult². As against this, the growing intermixture and synthesis of the Aryan and pre-Aryan streams of culture, manifested³ themselves very distinctly in the region of North-Eastern India, in the later Vedic period, and gave rise, later on, to momentous movements in religion and philosophy. The Aryans of this region, the easten outland⁴ according to some philologists, appear to have belonged to that branch which had been more in contact with and amenable to non-Aryan influences. 'In the Ganges basin as the frontier receded eastwards, the Harappā ideals permeated the religious thought of the Brāhmaṇas'.⁵ The pre-Vedic and non-Aryan ascetic tendency⁶ is clearly marked in the later Vedic period in some of the Upaniṣads and the Brhad-ārayaka Upaniṣad, one of the most important of them, reveals that Videha became the centre of a powerful intellectual ferment in the age of Janaka. By the 6th century B.C. this ascetic tendency had burst into full flower manifesting itself in the great ascetic religious movements—Jainism and Buddhism.⁷ The Ājīvaka sect and the non-Vedic and atheistic Sāṅkhya⁸ system also appear to have taken their rise in this cultural milieu.

Correspondence between Archaeological and Linguistic Data

The movement of the Aryans in waves, suggested by the linguistic evidence, accords well with the archaeological data brought to light in the recent excavations, which tend to indicate at least two major waves of immigrants, both of which can tentatively be equated with the Aryans. The P. G. Ware with its distribution in the Sarasvatī Valley, the Eastern Punjab and Western U. P., the traditional home of the Aryans, par excellence, has been associated with the Aryans.⁹

3. Pande, G. C., Studies in the Origins of Buddhism, Chap. VIII.
5. Piggott, Prehistoric India, p. 286.
7. Pande, G. C., op. cit., Chap. IX.
The evidence for the presence of Iranian element at Navdatoli in the second half of the 2nd millennium B.C. points to an Iranian penetration into Central India obviously signifying another wave of the Indo-Aryans. The close affinity in the pottery types between this latter site and Kausambi, towards the close of the 2nd millennium B.C., attests the fact that both belong to the same community of culture. This group, as the evidence of Kausambi shows, came in close contact with the Harappan culture and borrowed from it elements of urban civilisation including a specialised form of defence architecture. Thus, it may not be unreasonable to state that this was the group of the first Aryan immigrants who sacked the Harappan cities and conquered them but, as has happened so many times in history, the victors succumbed to the cultural influence of the vanquished. By the time the later wave of their kinsmen, the bearers of the P. G. Ware, entered the Punjab and the Sarasvati Valley, the Harappan cities had already been destroyed and deserted, and, as such, they had no direct contact with the great Harappan civilisation, which explains the cultural hiatus between them. The dead mounds were scrupulously avoided in their first settlement in the valley of the Sarasvati; longer association, however, made them settle on the old mounds in the Punjab and in Western U. P. without inducing them to utilise, for making more durable and comfortable houses, the tons of bricks which were easily available at Rūpar. By the time these people reached the central Gangetic Valley, they must have been accustomed to regard the citadels even on the Harappan pattern as those of their kinsmen. The above deductions based on the evidence of recent archaeology and in the light of linguistic theories, in the present state of our knowledge, must remain a hypothesis, tentative in character, to be tested by future archaeological work in these regions.

Aryan Expansion in the Central Gangetic Valley, in the Deccan and in the South

Evidence of the Kṛṣṇa Yajurveda School—The Taittirīya Samhitā, Brāhmaṇa and Āranyaka were composed in Brahmavarta, the land occupied by the Kuru-Pañcāla people, lying between the rivers Sarasvatī and Drṣadvatī and the western districts of U. P. In the period of the epics the Taittiriyas were to be found in the central Gangetic Valley round Ayodhyā. The Śrauta

2. Keith, loc. cit.
Sūtra of Baudhāyana, and also of Āpastamba originated in the South. Baudhāyana cannot be later than 6th or 5th century B.C. and Āpastamba has been assigned to the 4th century B.C. Winternitz has rightly concluded that the Aryans were well established in the South in the 7th century B.C.

The discovery of the Śyenaciti of the Puruṣamedha during these excavations and its attribution to the Kṛṣṇa Yajurveda School, confirms the evidence of the Rāmāyaṇa about the presence of the Taittiriyas in the central Gangetic Valley in the early historical period and affords an archaeological link in the expansion of the Kṛṣṇa Yajurveda School from Brahmāvarta to Southern India. The close cultural contact of the central Gangetic Valley with the Deccan and the South in this period is further demonstrated by the occurrence of typical forms of what have been called southern Brāhmi letters in the early seals from Kausāmbi, by the presence of brick-built soakage tanks, more widely distributed in the Deccan, and also by a number of pottery types common to Kausāmbi and the Deccan. The cumulative archaeological evidence, thus, clearly demonstrates Kausāmbi’s intimate connections with the Deccan and the Malwa region in the closing centuries of the 2nd millennium B.C. and the cultural contacts continuing in the early historical period.

New Light on the Aryan Immigration into India

Pārśva, Mahāvīra and Buddha presuppose the entire Vedic literature comprising the Saṃhitās, Brāhmaṇas and Upaniṣads divided into numerous schools. This entire development cannot be telescoped into six to seven hundred years, if the middle of the second millennium B.C. is assumed to be the date of the first Aryan entry in North Western India. It has also been demonstrated that the deities, Mitra, Varuṇa, Indra and Nāṣatyau figuring in the Boghaz-köy inscription in Asia Minor of the 14th century B.C. are Indian Vedic deities. This implies that the Aryans had settled in North Western India considerably before the 14th century B.C. so that these deities were no longer worshipped under Aryan names but

1. Winternitz, op. cit., p. 299.
3. Winternitz, loc. cit.
4. Infra, Chapter Eight.
under Indian Vedic names. The presence of a branch of the Aryans in the central Gangetic Valley and at Navdatoli in the latter half of the second millennium B.C. lends further support to the view that the Aryans must have entered the Punjab and even the valley of the Sarasvatī and Drīḍadvatī and Brahmapārtha at a much earlier date.

**Literary Evidence of the Growth of Cities in the Gangetic Valley**

Vedic literature offers convincing evidence of the existence of a number of towns in the Gangetic Valley. Towns like Āsandīvant, the royal city of Janamejaya Pārākṣita, Kāmpīla, Ayodhyā and Kauśāmbī are prominently mentioned. Pāṇini and the Jātakas present a picture of the central Gangetic Valley dominated by numerous towns and cities, many of which were evidently fortified. The word *pura*, denoting rampart, fort or stronghold, is of frequent occurrence in Vedic literature. Deities like Indra and Agni are invoked to destroy enemy’s forts, many of which were wide and broad and had ramparts of mud or unbaked bricks, probably also with stone facing. The word *dehī*, referring to defences or ramparts of hardened earth with palisades and a ditch, occurs in the R. V. A passage in the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa shows that moat or ditch was also known in the period of this Brāhmaṇa. Pāṇini refers to towns, town planning, fort, rampart, moat, gates and watch-towers. Kaṭiliya has given elaborate account of types of forts, the site for fortification, of rampart, towers, staircases, moat etc. He refers to *prākāra* over *vaṭra*. According to Pāṇini, *prākāra* was made of bricks and in

2. T. S. VII. 4. 19; M. S. III. 12. 20.
4. Ś. B. XII. 2. 2. 13; Gop. B. I. 2. 24; A. B. VIII. 14.
5. Agrawal, V. S., India as Known to Pāṇini, p. 72.
6. Rhys Davids, Buddhist India, pp. 34 ff.
7. R. V. I. 53.7; I. 131. 4; III. 15. 4; A. V. IV. 6. 23; Ś. B. III. 4. 4. 3, V. 3. 3. 24.
8. R. V. I. 89. 2.
10. R. V. VI. 47.2, VII. 6.5; Vedic Index vol. I, pp. 379, 589; Schrader, Prehistoric Antiquities of the Aryan Peoples, p. 344.
11. Ś. B. VII. 1. 1. 13.
14. Pāṇini, V. 1. 16.
the light of Pāṇini’s rule prākāra in Kauṭīlyya may denote revetment of baked bricks against rampart or vapra. The description of Pāṇini and Kauṭīlyya accords well with the defences at Kausāmbi in SP. III. 13 and III. 14 with the rampart, revetment of bricks, guard-rooms and towers, flanking a passage through them.

The literary evidence, thus, shows clearly that in the period of the Brāhmaṇas, the Jātakas, Pāṇini and Kauṭīlyya (c. 1000 to 3rd century B.C.) urban life was fully developed in the Gangetic Valley and cities with elaborate arrangements for defence had come into existence. These excavations substantiate the literary evidence described above.

**Character of the Early Culture of Kausāmbi**

The earliest culture of Kausāmbi was evidently derived from more than one source. Its possible indebtedness to the Harappan culture and to a wave of Aryan immigrants has already been noticed. Along with the sturdy red ware, noted above, the black-and-red also occurs practically throughout the period, which from the nature of the material, obviously represents a stream of cultural tradition different from the one represented by the former. The first culture at Kausāmbi, therefore, is of multiple origin and the early settlers, evidently in the course of their journey to the central Gangetic Valley, came across and absorbed elements of more than one culture.

*The Early Town—An Iron Age Town*: The earliest inhabitants of the city were on the verge of discovering iron. It is significant that iron occurs in SP. I. 3 along with the earliest defences, and thus antedates the N. B. P. Ware and also the P. G. Ware in the central Gangetic Valley. In Ālamgirpūra also, iron occurs throughout in the P. G. Ware levels which, therefore, can no longer be regarded as essentially a Bronze Age Ware; nor is it likely that Achaemenid Persia transmitted to India the knowledge and use of either iron or of coinage in c. 500 B. C.

The excavations have also revealed that the uninscribed copper cast coins are earlier than the silver punch-marked coins at this site and their first occurrence synchronises with the spread of the P. G. Ware in this region.

---

To sum up, the urban revolution in the Gangetic Valley was achieved by a people who lived in close proximity of the Harappans, from whom they borrowed not only the conception of a town and a citadel but also the various elements of architecture. Another facet of their culture is represented by a number of pottery types similar to those from Navdatoli which has yielded convincing evidence of Iranian contact in the second half of the 2nd millennium B. C., thus, linking them with the Indo-Aryans. Very soon in their life and considerably before the introduction of the N. B. P. Ware, they were equipped with the knowledge of iron and coinage. Thus, the urban revolution in the central Gangetic Valley, with its roots in the Indus Civilisation, was probably an achievement of a branch of the Indo-Aryans and marked the beginning of the Iron Age in these regions antedating the N. B. P. and the P. G. Wares. It also developed elements of culture like coinage, unknown to the former civilisation, which furnished the basis of economic life in the historical period.

Material Evidence of Foreign Invasions in the Gangetic Valley

The Bactrian Greeks—Three types of arrow-heads, viz. types (I), (J) and (K), represented by 16, 11 and 10 pieces respectively, are of great value as they provide, for the first time, material evidence of foreign invasions in three successive periods. It has been pointed out elsewhere that SP. III. 14 ended in extensive conflagration and destruction connoting invasion. Eight sub-types of type (I) (double-tanged) and one of type (J) (three-bladed) arrow-heads have been discovered from the destructions of structures of SP. III. 14. These arrow-heads are intrusive to the Gangetic Valley and have also been reported from Taxila, the only site in the Indian sub-continent, where they were associated with the Bactrian Greeks. According to the stratigraphical evidence, the N. B. P. Ware survived after this invasion in two structural periods. These arrow-heads also pre-date all the coins of the Mitra Kings, namely, Bhaspatimitra, Ghoṣa, Sudeva etc., and are also earlier than the three sealings with characteristic Śuṅga paleography for which a date between c. 150 to 50 B. C. has been suggested. From the combined evidence of pottery, seals and coins, the appearance of the eight varieties of the double-tanged and one of three-bladed arrow-heads and consequently the period of the Greek invasion can be placed within the first quarter of the 2nd century B. C. (200-175 B. C.). Taking into consideration all the facts, the suggested date for SP. III. 14 is c. 255 to c. 185 B. C. and thus c. 185 B. C. may be taken as the date

1. Infra. p. 32.
for the end of this period and beginning of SP. III. 15. The Yavana invasion\(^1\) of the Gangetic Valley has been referred to by Patañjali who credits the Greeks with the conquest of Sāketa and Mādhyamikā. According to the Yuga Purāṇa of the Gārgī Saṁhitā, the Yavanas invaded immediately after the reign of the Mauryan King Śāliśūka and captured Sāketa and Pāṭaliputra. The Mālavikāgnimitra of Kālidāsa also refers to a war between the forces of Puṣyaṁitra Śuṅga and the Yavanas on the banks of the Sindhū. The identity of the leader of the Yavana invasion has given rise to an acute controversy and opinion has been sharply divided between Demetrius and Menander. The stratigraphic evidence suggests Demetrius as the Yavana king who invaded Kauśāmbī in the early decades of the 2nd century B. C., a date too early for Menander.

It is also significant that the performance of the Puruṣamedha sacrifice on the Śyenaciti (hawk-shaped altar) is coeval with the third Revetment which is of the nature of a repair of Revetment 2 destroyed at the end of SP. III. 14. According to this evidence, the Greek invasion was followed immediately by the repair of the rampart and the performance of the sacrifice which symbolised assertion of sovereignty and ascendency over all inimical forces. The circumstantial evidence points to Puṣyaṁitra as its performer and the victorious defender of the Gangetic Valley against the invasion of the Bactrian Greeks.

The Śaka-Kuṣāṇa—One specimen of type (J) (three-bladed) arrowhead occurs in SP. III. 14 along with the double-tanged, and the rest belong to SP. III. 17 and III. 18 (c. 45 B. C. to 95 A. D.). The second time they appear evidently with the Śaka-Kuṣāṇas, whose presence at Kauśāmbī is fully documented by the discovery in earlier excavations of a large number of Śaka-Parthian terracotta figurines with specialized types like the shrine of the Mother Goddess, a female deity with double-knobbed head-dress or with peaked caps, dancers, musicians etc.\(^2\) Śaka names are of frequent occurrence in the inscriptions of this period from the Ghoṣitārāma monastery and a seal of Kaniṣka and a large number of Kuṣāṇa coins were also discovered in the earlier excavations.

The Hūṇa—The evidence of the Hūṇa conquest of Kauśāmbī was furnished by two seals, discovered in the excavations of the monastery of Ghoṣitā-

---

rāma\(^1\), one counterstruck by letters \(To Ra Ma Na\), and the other with the legend \(Huna-Raja\) evidently referring to the same king. The arrow-heads of type (K) provide another evidence of Hūna conquest under king Toramāṇa, sometime between c. 510 to c. 515 A. D. These three types of arrow-heads (I), (J) and (K) are valuable additions to our knowledge of the invasions of the Greeks, the Śaka-Kuśāṇas and the Hūṇas in this region. It is also clear from the excavations that Kauśāṃbī could never fully recover from the Hūṇa devastations.

---

CHAPTER TWO

STRATIGRAPHY AND CHRONOLOGY

A. STRATIGRAPHY

In the course of the long history of the city, there accumulated on the semi-impervious and hard original surface, a deposit of nearly 55 ft. burying foundations and buildings of different periods. Such a rise in the levels of the town may partly be accounted for by the artificial packings of mud surviving in the form of ramparts and partly by the destructions and the constructions of different periods of habitations. A section across the passage of the ancient gateway shows a rise of more than 30 ft. between the living surface of the builders of the first rampart and the level on which the people of the last period lived. Thus, there is no doubt that the total accumulation between the first level to the last is more than 30 ft.

The excavations have brought to light, as indicated elsewhere, 25 structural periods, the buildings of which are represented by the remnants of walls and floors lying over one another.

Of these habitation periods, described as SP. (Structural Period), except the first two and the last one, the remaining twenty-two are associated with five building periods of the ramparts. A fortress once built lasted evidently for a number of generations and walls and floors were built at different levels against the original wall of the fortress. Thus, structures of as many as seven periods were built against or in association with Rampart 1. Similarly, five structural periods together indicate the total span of life of Rampart 2. Two, three and five structural periods are associated with Ramparts 3, 4 and 5 respectively. They are numbered in the text as SP. (Structural Periods) 1, 2, 3, 4 etc.

Cultural Divisions

The long span of time indicated by these 25 periods of occupation
witnessed very important changes in the material and cultural equipment of the people. The organisation and the building of the defences show changes of a fundamental character almost revolutionizing the very concept of defence. Tools and equipments also show variation in their types and popularity from age to age. The changes are most explicitly mirrored in the pottery which, by its vast numbers and the malleability of the medium, reflects the currents and cross-currents of cultural influences. It has, therefore, naturally been adopted as a criterion for cultural division. It may, however, be noted that the cultural divisions based on other components of culture, equally or even more important than pottery, do not always correspond to those arrived at on the basis of the analysis of pottery. There are certain periods which seem to constitute a clear landmark, as they register the convergence of changes in different aspects of material culture. On the basis of pottery, these twenty-five periods lend themselves to divisions in four broad phases. The first four periods of occupation represent the first or earliest culture of Kauśāmbi, characterised by the prevalence of pottery types analogous to those discovered at Navdatoli, Rangpur, Somanātha and other western Indian sites in a late Harappan or immediately post-Harappan context. These periods are, therefore, marked as SP. I. 1, SP. I. 2, SP. I. 3 and SP. I. 4.

The second cultural period, in terms of pottery, comprises Structural Periods 5 to 8. Some of the types of Period I continue, but the characteristic feature of the pottery of the second period is the predominance of the Black-and-Red Ware and the presence of the Painted Grey Ware, which, as available at Kauśāmbi, represents a comparatively late and decadent stage of the Painted Grey Ware of the upper Gangetic Valley, the Punjab and Rajasthan. The periods are marked SP. II. 5 to SP. II. 8.

The ninth habitation period is distinguished by the appearance of the characteristic ware of the central Gangetic Valley, known as the Northern Black Polished Ware. This ware was in vogue up to the Structural Period 16. The periods from ninth to sixteenth, therefore, are marked SP. III. 9 to SP. III. 16. It is significant to note that these first three cultural periods do not represent watertight compartments. There are certain structural periods which represent cultural overlapping. In SP. II. 5, for example, the pottery types of Period I continue in full force; only a few more types which may be regarded as the fossil types of Period II, make their appearance. Similarly, SP. III. 9, which marks the first appearance of N. B. P. Ware, is also characterised by the manufacture of Painted Grey Ware. In fact, the N. B. P. itself shows strong influence of
traditions of painting. The Black-and-Red Ware is present in Periods 1 and II and also up to SP. III. 10.

The Structural Periods 17 to 25 constitute one group, the pottery of which is devoid of the N. B. P. Ware. These structural periods have been shown as SP. IV. 17 to SP. IV. 25.

The main cultural periods indicated by different kinds of pottery do not, however, coincide with significant changes in the nature of the defences. Rampart 1, for example, was built in Period I (SP. I. 3), and it continued throughout Period II and lasted up to the first structural period of the N. B. P. Ware or SP. III. 9. On the other hand, the introduction of the moat, heralding a very significant change in the planning of the defences, was made in SP. II. 5, which also saw the appearance and circulation of coins.

**B. CHRONOLOGY**

**Evidence of Coins**

Coins are almost uniformly distributed in all the periods from II. 5 to the end, and many of them have been discovered in the post-structural pits. The earliest coins are square uninscribed cast coins, which have, on the obverse, elephant to left before standard, sometimes Svastika-topped, and on the reverse, tree in railing, hollow cross, arched hill and taurine. These coins seem to have been current from SP. II. 5 to SP. III. 16, though a few pieces have been discovered from subsequent deposits and later pits as well. The circular uninscribed cast coin is distributed over SP. III. 10 to SP. III. 14. The coin, erroneously described as lanky bull type, has been discovered from SP. III. 13 to SP. III. 15. A large number of tiny uninscribed cast coins are distributed from SP. III. 10 to SP. IV. 19; two also have been found in SP. IV. 20.

Silver and copper punch-marked coins have been discovered from SP. III. 10 to SP. III. 14.

The inscribed cast coins of the Mitra kings of Kauśambi belong to SP. III. 15 and SP. III. 16. The kings represented are Bṛhaspatimitra, Agnimitra, Ghoṣa or Aśvaghoṣa and probably Sudeva. The coins of the Magha rulers mark the beginning of Rampart 5 in SP. 20. IV.
On the basis of the evidence of coins, Rampart 3 represents the period of the Mitra kings of Kauśāmbī who, on grounds of paleography and other historical considerations, have been assigned to the period from the 2nd to the 1st century B.C.

On numismatic grounds, Rampart 5 seems to have been built by the Maghas, who made Kauśāmbī their capital in the second half of the 2nd century A.D.

Seals

The evidence of these coins is also fully corroborated by the evidence of three seals belonging to Rampart 3. One was discovered on the floor of SP. III. 16, the other from Rampart 3 and the third in a pit immediately after SP. III. 16. Paleographically, as noticed elsewhere, the seals may be assigned to c.150 B.C. to c.50 B.C. These seals, with the characteristic Śuṅga paleography, were discovered in levels that yielded Mitra coins. It is further to be noted that SP. III. 16 is also the last period in which the N. B. P. Ware occurs. SP. III. 15 and III. 16, therefore, can be assigned from the 2nd century to the first half of the 1st century B.C. On account of the first appearance of the coins of the Magha kings, the beginnings of Rampart 5 can be dated to the second half of the 2nd century A.D. The first occurrence of punch-marked coins in the 5th-4th century B.C., is more than likely.

Evidence of Terracotta Figurines

Completely moulded plaques with elaborate decorations, products of an artistic tradition that found its most exquisite expression in the art of Bharhut and Sāṇchī, have been discovered in the destructions of Rampart 2, at the end of SP. III. 14, from the floor of SP. III. 15 and SP. III. 16 and also a few in the destructions after SP. III. 17. Terracottas of this type have been assigned to the Mauryan and Śuṅga periods by authorities on art. For them, a date between 200 B.C. to 50 A.D. will meet with general approval.

Evidence of Arrow-heads

It has been noticed elsewhere that arrow-head types—(I. 1) to (I. 8), (J) and (K. 1) to (K. 4)—are intrusive to the Gangetic Valley. Types (I. 1) to (I. 8) have generally been recovered from the pits that mark the destruction of Rampart 2 after *SP.* III. 14.

These types are associated with the Bactrian Greeks at Taxila¹ and seem to indicate the same source here as well. According to literary evidence also, the Greeks had advanced into the Gangetic Valley as far as Pāṭaliputra in the 2nd century B. C.

Type (J), belonging to *SP.* IV. 17, 18, was favoured by the Śakas. Type (K) has been discovered from the large scale destructions that marked the end of *SP.* IV. 24 and also of the defences at Kauśāmbi. They seem to be the weapons of the Hūnas. It is to be noted that the seals of the Hūna leader Toramāṇa and of Hūnarāja were discovered in the pits of the same period and of the same nature in the Ghoṣitārāma monastery. The end of *SP.* IV. 24 can, therefore, be fixed within very close limits. By c. 510 A. D., Toramāṇa had invaded the Saugor² district of Madhya Pradesh and, therefore, the end of *SP.* IV. 24 and of Rampart 5 can be dated between c. 510 to c. 515 A. D.

On the basis of the inscribed coins, seals, terracotta figurines and arrow-heads, the beginning of Rampart 3 can be approximately dated in the first half of the 2nd century B. C., of Rampart 4 between 50 B. C. to 50 A. D., the beginning of Rampart 5 in the second half of the 2nd century A. D. and its end between c. 510 to c. 515 A. D. The various sub-periods associated with these three ramparts, therefore, may be tentatively dated as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><em>SP.</em></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IV. 25</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>c. 515 A. D.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV. 24</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>c. 445 A. D.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV. 23</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>c. 375 A. D.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV. 22</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>c. 305 A. D.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV. 21</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>c. 235 A. D.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV. 20</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>c. 165 A. D.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

². Eran Inscription of Bhāṇugupta, Sircar, D. C., Select Ins., No. 38, p. 335.
| SP. IV  | 19 | — | c. 95 A.D. | — | c. 165 A.D. |
| SP. IV  | 18 | — | c. 25 A.D. | — | c. 95 A.D. |
| SP. IV  | 17 | — | c. 45 B.C. | — | c. 25 A.D. |
| SP. III | 16 | — | c. 125 B.C. | — | c. 45 B.C. |
| SP. III | 15 | — | c. 185 B.C. | — | c. 125 B.C. |

The average span of a period thus comes to about 70 years. It is to be noted that the average life of a period in the Ghoṣṭārāma monastery and in the excavations (1949-50) near the Asokan pillar is slightly longer and works out to about 75 years.

Assuming the same average span of life for the structural periods associated with Ramparts 2 and 1 and also for the two pre-defence periods, the following dates may be proposed:

| SP. III | 14 | — | c. 255 B.C. | — | c. 185 B.C. |
| SP. III | 13 | — | c. 325 B.C. | — | c. 255 B.C. |
| SP. III | 12 | — | c. 395 B.C. | — | c. 325 B.C. |
| SP. III | 11 | — | c. 465 B.C. | — | c. 395 B.C. |
| SP. III | 10 | — | c. 535 B.C. | — | c. 465 B.C. |
| SP. III |  9 | — | c. 605 B.C. | — | c. 535 B.C. |
| SP. II  |  8 | — | c. 675 B.C. | — | c. 605 B.C. |
| SP. II  |  7 | — | c. 745 B.C. | — | c. 675 B.C. |
| SP. II  |  6 | — | c. 815 B.C. | — | c. 745 B.C. |
| SP. II  |  5 | — | c. 885 B.C. | — | c. 815 B.C. |
| SP. I   |  4 | — | c. 955 B.C. | — | c. 885 B.C. |
| SP. I   |  3 | — | c. 1025 B.C. | — | c. 955 B.C. |
| SP. I   |  2 | — | c. 1095 B.C. | — | c. 1025 B.C. |
| SP. I   |  1 | — | c. 1165 B.C. | — | c. 1095 B.C. |

On this basis the four cultural periods are to be dated as follows:

- **Kauśāmbī I** — c. 1165 B.C. to c. 885 B.C.
- **Kauśāmbī II** — c. 885 B.C. to c. 605 B.C.
- **Kauśāmbī III** — c. 605 B.C. to c. 45 B.C.
- **Kauśāmbī IV** — c. 45 B.C. to c. 580 A.D.

The beginning of fortification may be dated to c. 1025 B.C., of the first moat and the laying of the corresponding road to c. 885 B.C. and the beginning
of the system of guard-rooms to c. 325 B.C. The dates of the building of Ramparts 2, 3, 4 and 5 will be respectively c. 535 B.C., c. 185 B.C., c. 45 B.C. and c. 165 A.D. Ramparts 3 and 5 appear to have been built by the Mitras and Maghas respectively.

According to this scheme of chronology, the beginning of the N. B. P. Ware is to be placed in c. 600 B.C., a possibility fully supported by the evidence of the earlier excavations at Kaušāmbi and other sites in the Gangetic Valley. The evidence from Taxila also confirms this dating. The equation of this ware in north-western regions with the spread of the Mauryan dominion does not seem to be warranted by the discovery of sixteen of the Bhir Mound sherds at depths between seven and thirteen feet and only two above seven feet, which level is regarded as contemporary with Alexander’s invasion. The ware, according to Taxila evidence, is essentially pre-Alexander and six or seven feet of accumulation, normally, must have taken at least a couple of centuries. The evidence, therefore, indicates a period about 525 B.C. for the first introduction of this ware in this region. It is well known that the central Gangetic Valley was the area of its origin, and its spread in the adjoining regions, particularly the north-western, must have taken some time. On this showing, a date round about 600 B.C. for its origin in its homeland is indicated by the evidence at Taxila also.

The Carbon-14 date for pottery from Navdatoli, analogous to that from Kaušāmbi Period I, is 1500 B.C. to 1100 B.C. According to the scheme of chronology worked out here, this period at Kaušāmbi has been dated from c. 1165 B.C. to c. 885 B.C.

Thus, the chronology, worked out on the basis of stratification and the associated datable finds, is fully supported by the evidence furnished by other sites in the Gangetic Valley and in other regions of the Indian sub-continent.

1. Ann. Bibl. Ind. Arch., 1958, vol. XII, Fig. 1, pp. XXXIX.
2. Lal, B. B., Excav. at Hastināpura, A. I., Nos. 10 and 11, p. 23
CHAPTER THREE

LAY-OUT OF THE EXCAVATED AREA

The ruins of the ancient city of Kausambi are situated on the left bank of the Yamunā, 32 miles south-west of Allahabad. Traces of ancient habitation cover an area of about eight square miles, part of which was defended by a complex system of fortification. The mounds of the ancient rampart, together with the surrounding moat, form a semi-circle with the Yamunā as the base (Pl. 5). The ramparts have a peripheral circuit of more than 21,000 ft. or approximately 4 miles. The average height of the rampart is about 35 ft., the individual towers being as high as 70 to 75 ft.

The three sides, eastern, northern and western, of the rampart, marked by a series of salients and towers at regular intervals (Pls. 6-10), are pierced by 11 gateways, 5 of which were the principal ones: 2 in the eastern, 2 in the northern and 1 in the western wing. The remaining 6 were subsidiary gates. The principal gateways show some special features in their construction. Of these, one on the western side and the other on the eastern side are situated on a line running parallel to the Yamunā, which cuts the ancient mound practically through the centre. These two are most complex and elaborate. The western one (Pl. 11) is situated at the apex of a triangle formed by the two salients into which the western side is divided, the southern one measuring 1,550 ft., the northern, 1,950 ft. and the base of this triangle being 2,550 ft. The moat in this area has a maximum width of 1,600 ft. and is divided into two by two mounds situated on the base of the triangle at a distance of 540 ft. Evidently, the two flanked the passage through the western gateway. Like the other principal gateways, the two on the northern side are also provided with watch-towers, situated on the other side of the moat having an average width of 250 ft. There were six subsidiary gateways—two in each wing. They were less wide and apparently had a simpler plan.

The eastern gateway had a number of distinguishing features, (1) a mud-
KAUSAMBI, 1957-59
PLAN OF THE DEFENCES

Scale of Feet

Scale of Metres

52 FEET OMITTED

PF 1 = PLATFORM 1
DR 2 = DRAIN 2
FL 3 = FLOOR 3
20(4) = WALL 2. PERIOD 1. STRUCTURAL PERIOD 4
bund, which served as a curtain for the gateway, with a maximum length and width of 350 ft. and 90 ft. respectively; (2) a passage of 25 ft. width between this bund and the rampart; (3) a tower measuring 140 ft. x 90 ft. situated on the other side of the moat at a distance of 275 ft. from the terminus of the bund; (4) two towers at the top of the rampart opposite the outer tower. The maximum width of the moat in this area is 480 ft. It is evident that the tower on the outer side of the moat, the moat, the curtain and the two towers at the top of the rampart, formed part of a carefully laid out defence complex. A wall measuring 262 ft. in length formed the northern flank of this complex.¹

KAUŚĀMBI IN LITERATURE

Kauśāmbi was the capital of the Vatsas who find mention in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa², the Gopatha Brāhmaṇa³ and the Kausitaki Upaniṣad⁴. The Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa mentions one Proti Kausuru Bindi, a citizen of Kauśāmbi. The city⁵ is also referred to in the epics, the Purāṇas, the Tripiṭakas and in other Sanskrit and Pāli texts. The Buddhist pilgrims, Fahien and Yuan Chwang, visited the city. It is mentioned in the inscription on the Aśokan pillar at Allahabad, the Kaḍā inscription of the Pratihāra king Yaśapāla and the pillar at Kauśāmbi itself. These literary records testify to the existence of the city from at least the later Vedic period upto the Mughal period.

A BRIEF HISTORY OF THE EARLIER EXCAVATIONS

These ruins on the Yamunā were identified with the ancient Kauśāmbi of literature by Cunningham.⁶ The University of Allahabad⁷ started excavations in 1949 near the Aśokan pillar adjacent to the excavations conducted by the Archaeological Survey of India in 1937-38. The subsequent excavations by the

1. I. A., 1954-55, p. 18 and pls. XXX and XXXI.
University (1951-56) led to the discovery of the monastery of Ghoṣitārāma, the abode of Buddha at Kauśāmbī.

OBJECTIVES OF THE PRESENT EXCAVATIONS

The aim of these excavations was to study the history of the defences at Kauśāmbī and to ascertain the antiquity and the nature of the original rampart and its successive repairs, if any, and also the changes made in it in different periods. Excavations of the previous years made it clear that the buildings in the city were generally planned with reference to the cardinal points. Surface examination of the area revealed that the southern tower at the top of the rampart, the toe of the rampart near the curtain as well as the terminal of the curtain, were in one line running east-west. A trench was, therefore, laid across them and was, later on, extended on the northern, southern, and western sides according to needs. The excavations revealed that the earliest structure was situated at a depth of 54 ft. from the existing level, across the rampart, in the city, which has been considerably denuded since it was abandoned. The total habitation deposit intervening between the first and the last period must have been more than 54 ft. and is a vertical record of the city’s life.

This habitation deposit accumulated during twenty-five building periods, of which two are pre-defence, twenty-two are associated with five ramparts and the twenty-fifth was built over the ruins of the last defences of the city. With the first rampart are associated as many as seven building periods marked SP. I. 3, 4, II. 5, 6, 7, 8 and III. 9; with the second, five building periods marked SP. III. 10, 11, 12, 13 and 14; with the third rampart, two building periods marked SP. III. 15 and 16; with the fourth, three building periods marked SP. IV. 17, 18 and 19 and with the fifth rampart, five building periods marked SP. IV. 20, 21, 22, 23 and 24.

Pre-Defence Structures

SP. I. 1—Fl. I. —The earliest human habitation at the site is represented by a floor (Pl. 15 A) built on layer 27, a thin mud accumulation above a very

hard, compact, semi-permeable natural soil full of small lime accretions. This one brick floor is available in a very disturbed condition.

SP. I. 2.—A sandy layer, marked 26 in the Section, accumulated possibly due to flood on Fl. I. 1. The foundation of Wall 1 (Pl. 15 A) was laid into this layer. Contemporary with this wall, there were some other structures in the area, the evidence of which is furnished by bricks lying in a disturbed condition below Revetment 1 of Rampart 1 built in the subsequent period. The wall and the debris of bricks are sealed by layer 25.

Beginning of the Defences

Rampart 1 and Revetment 1 (Pls. 13, 14; Figs. 2, 3)

SP. I. 3. The third period is a landmark in the history of the city. It was during this period that the city was protected by a massive defence system. The core of Rampart 1 was built of hard, compact and thoroughly rammed clay, evidently excavated from the natural soil. It is significant that the first rampart is completely devoid of pottery and other material indicating human association. The outer side had a sharp slope which was revetted externally by a burnt brick revetment about 9 ft. in thickness at the base and available to a height of 40 ft. 5 ins. comprising 151 courses. It has been exposed to a length of 43 ft. The notable feature of the revetment is a batter which has two different angles, of 15° up to the first thirty courses and of 40° in the upper courses. The bricks measure on an average 19.5 ins. x 13 ins. x 2.75 ins. Only new and complete bricks were used. Except in the top fourteen courses, the bricks were laid throughout in the English bond. Every succeeding course formed a footing of about 3 ins. width. The revetment was covered by 2 ins. to 3 ins. thick plaster, composed of mud and lime (Pl. 16 B). The carbonate of lime is present to the extent of 5.7-5.8%, and fine sand, silt and clay account for nearly 87%.

1. Report of chemical analysis by Dr. B. B. Lal, Archaeological Chemist in India, Deptt. of Archaeology:—

"Several lumps of plaster from the earliest defence structures at Kausāmbī were received in this Laboratory for chemical analysis. A general examination of the specimen revealed that all the lumps were more or less alike in texture and compactness and apparently came from the same source.

Two lumps of the plaster were selected for chemical analysis, taking care to select such
The weathering and exposure of the plastered surface and its subsequent burial under a thick deposit of sand, silt and clay, might have been responsible for reducing the percentage of lime. The ideal condition of preservation of Revetment 1 was due to the protective covering provided by the plaster which formed a distinctive layer across the section.

The foundations of the revetment were laid in layer 25 and layer 24 composed of earth, gritty material and sherds, constituted the first pavement against it. Clear traces of the brick-floor of the passage through Rampart 1 and its revetment have been laid bare under the blocking of the passage in later periods (Pl. 16 A).

SP. I. 4—Evidence of building activity during this period is provided by seven weep-holes (Pl. 15 A) cut into Revetment 1 at a regular interval of 6 ft. between courses 15 and 18 from the bottom. The seepage seems to have impaired the lower portion of the revetment and caused it to bulge out. It became necessary to provide these weep-holes and also to build a retaining wall (Wall 2) pieces as showed maximum contrast in colour and texture. One lump was slightly whitish and the other yellowish. Their chemical analysis are recorded below:

**Whitish lump from plaster specimen.**
1. Lime (CaO) 4·81%
2. Insolubles (Fine sand, silt and clay) 87·99%
3. Oxides of iron and aluminium+carbon dioxide (extracted by hydrochloric acid) 7·20%
Total 100·00%

**Yellowish lump from plaster specimen.**
1. Lime (CaO) 4·73%
2. Insolubles (Fine sand, silt and clay) 86·06%
3. Oxides of iron and aluminium+carbon dioxide
   \[
   (\text{Fe}_2\text{O}_3 + \text{Al}_2\text{O}_3 + \text{CO}_2) \text{ Extracted by Hydrochloric acid (by diff.)}
   \]
   9·21%
Total 100·00%

The above results show that the two lumps are almost alike in chemical composition. The specimen is, therefore, composed of mud and lime, the carbonate of lime being present to the extent of 5·7-5·8%. The aqueous extract of the specimen shows a faintly alkaline reaction. Caustic lime (CaO) is, therefore, present in detectable amount although most of the lime has undergone carbonation. The specimen is soft and crumbles to a fine powder when rubbed between fingers. Clay and silt account for the greater part of the insoluble matter; very fine sand is, however, in appreciable quantities. It is, therefore, concluded that fine alluvial clay was used for preparation of the plaster, which was imparted some strength by the addition of lime to the extent of about 5% of the clay-lime mixture.
in order to strengthen the revetment. These weep-holes discharged themselves into circular unlined pits (Pl. 15 B) with a diameter of 1 ft. 9 ins., cut through layers 24, 25, 26, 27 and also the natural soil. Layer 23 is the contemporary accumulation of this period.

Road, Moat, Subsidiary Rampart and Raising of the Passage (Figs. 2, 3)

SP. II. 5—Period 5 constitutes another landmark in the evolution of the defence system. The significant addition of the period is digging of the earliest moat (described on pp. 38-40). The building of Subsidiary Rampart 1, the construction of the first roads between the subsidiary rampart and the moat and also on the outer side of the moat, and the raising of the level of the passage through the main gateway, were logical corollary of the digging of the moat.

Subsidiary Rampart 1—At a distance of about 24 ft. from Revetment 1, was constructed a mud bund with a basal width of 32 ft. and an approximate height of 18 ft. Exposed to a length of 80 ft., it was coeval with the moat and was built of clean rammed mud, similar in colour, composition and material to the core of Rampart 1. This subsidiary rampart served the double purpose—protection of the revetment from floods and the over-flow of the moat, and as a screen to the main passage.

Between the foot of Subsidiary Rampart 1 and the moat, Road 1 (p. 40) was laid.

Raising of the Passage Level—The earlier passage through the main gateway was sealed by layer 22. The foundations of the new passage (Pl. 16 A) of this period were laid in this layer. New and complete bricks were used and laid in the English bond.

SP. II. 6—There does not appear to have been much building activity during this period. The only evidence of construction is furnished by the debris between Walls 1 and 3 and a floor discovered in an extremely fragmentary condition.

SP. II. 7—The period witnessed the construction of Wall 3, repair of the passage and accumulation of a distinctive deposit of black colour looking like
ancient humus. A new road (Road 2) was laid over the earlier Road 1 and the moat (Moat 2) was re-excavated.

Wall 3 (Pl. 15A)—Wall 3 was constructed at right angles with Revetment 1 at its southern available end. It is available to a height of 14 courses and was built to serve as a revetment for the packing against Revetment 1. The building of this new revetment signified a considerable change in the plan of the defences.

The passage through the gateway was repaired after an extensive destruction, the evidence of which is furnished by the visible damage to the floor at its top, the accumulation and subsequent levelling of debris of bricks and the renovation of the floor.

At the top of Revetment 1, accumulated a deposit of an average thickness of 4 ins. (maximum 7 and minimum 3 ins.) (Pl. 18 B). This level was evidently exposed for a very long period without much disturbance so that the decayed vegetation led to the formation, under favourable climatic conditions, of this thin deposit of black colour. It is to be noted that this ancient humus has been exposed in the course of excavation in other areas of the site and also can be seen in the sections made by rain-gullies even outside the ramparts.

SP. II. 8—The period witnessed extensive repairs in Revetment 1 and major building activities in the area. Throughout the five structural periods of its existence, the top of the revetment had remained unchanged. But it was during this period that the rampart was raised by about 8 ft. Mud-blocks were laid which now give an impression of mud-bricks (Pl. 18 B). The top was finally covered with sandy earth full of small kankar nodules. A sharp break in the construction showing contrast with the original edge of the revetment, furnishes the evidence of rebuilding and raising of Revetment 1 during this period. The original top of the revetment was maintained as such by two courses of bricks laid breadthwise. In the repair the builders lost sight of this and since they also faithfully laid bricks in the English bond, the alternate courses of headers and stretchers in the repaired portion, fell out of step with the original revetment. The unequal sinking of the original and the repaired portion has left a sharp break between the two (Pl. 17).

An additional wing of the revetment, (marked as Revetment 1 A in the
plan) built at the southern end of Revetment 1, is now available in the form of collapsed debris up to a length of 73 ft. (Pl. 18 A). The courses of this additional construction are bonded with the courses of the repair of Revetment 1 and form an obtuse angle at the joint.

To this period also belongs a two course thick passage-floor (Fl. 3), exposed to a length and width of 28 ft. and 15 ft. respectively, made of brick-bats. It was covered with a thin contemporary deposit yielding Painted Grey Ware and Black-and-Red Ware.

SP. III. 9—The rampart was raised by 3 ft. and Revetment 1 was rebuilt and raised by 14 courses for the last time. These courses are laid, sealing the junction of Revetment 1 and the additional construction of the earlier period. It is significant to note that the practice of laying bricks in the English bond, in alternate courses of headers and stretchers, strictly adhered to from the beginning of Revetment 1 (I. 3) up to the last building period (II. 8), was now abandoned and the fourteen courses were laid practically in headers, only a few stretchers being used at the end.

The total life-span of Rampart 1 and its revetment, is indicated by six structural periods subsequent to its original build. The revetment witnessed, during its life, significant changes in the conception of the planning of the defence system and also in the cultural equipments of the people. There is evidence of large scale disturbances at the end of SP. II. 9 shown clearly by a huge pit extending in practically all the trenches and at places as deep as 12 to 14 ft. It is full of N. B. P. Ware of extremely good quality and also Painted Grey Ware and fragments of stone. Evidently, there was some stone-building the debris of which found their way into this pit.

Rampart 2 and Revetment 2 (Pls. 12, 19)

SP. III. 10 saw intense building activity which brought into being a number of major structures in the area and a complete change in the plan of the defences. The top of the rampart was raised by about 6 ft. while the area between the outer face of the revetment and the subsidiary rampart was packed with loose earth, ash, sand and clay. A new subsidiary rampart was built, extending the area of the defences by 79 ft. The packed platform constituting Rampart 2 was revetted on the northern side by brick-facings and on the eastern, by a curved wall (Wall 4). The moat was re-excavated and Road 3 was relaid
between the foot of Subsidiary Rampart 2 and the moat and also over Roads 1 and 2, on the other side of the moat. Drain 1 also belongs to this period.

Revetment 2 is available to a length and height of 59 ft. and 19 ft. respectively. It was battered back to 30°. The bricks, measuring on an average 18 ins. × 12 ins. × 2.5 ins., were laid in the English bond. At its western end, there was an oblong bastion measuring 8 ft. × 6 ft. Revetment 2 is built directly against the packing, over the passage of Revetment 1, with which it forms an angle of 70° on the plan. With this revetment are associated five structural periods.

SP. III. 10—Wall 4 is now available in an extremely disturbed condition up to a length of 11 ft. and a height of 13 courses. It was a curvilinear structure and served the same purpose as its successor (Wall 6).

Available to a length of 12 ft. 6 ins., Drain 1, three courses deep and with a channel 1 ft. 2 ins. wide, is built over a huge pit that marked the end of Revetment 1.

With a basal width of 38 ft. and available to a height of 13 ft. 6 ins., Subsidiary Rampart 2 was built of earth, yellowish in appearance, full of N. B. P. Ware of fine quality with an occasional sprinkling of Painted Grey Ware. It also yielded punch-marked coins. Its sides were exposed for a considerable period and bones were dumped on its western face (city side).

SP. III. 11—To this period belong the curved Wall 6, Wall 7 and Stair No.1. Over the debris of Wall 4, was built Wall 6 (Pl. 20), measuring 63 ft. 3 ins. and 67 ft. 10 ins. respectively, on the inner and outer (city) sides of the curve. It was 6 ft. 10 ins. wide and encased a stone-paved passage 6 ft. 10 ins. deep and 1 ft. 9 ins. wide. The wall, available to a height of 7 ft. 9 ins. and comprising 32 courses, was built in the packing against Subsidiary Rampart 2. The lower 22 courses are extremely irregular and make it clear that the wall was built against a packing. At its northern junction with Revetment 2, there were traces of guard-rooms.

The passage (or drain?) had a corbelled arch finally capped with bricks laid width-wise (Pl. 21 A). The lower fourteen courses on the two inner sides are
KAJSÂMBI 1957-59
SECTION ACROSS THE DEFENCES ON AB

Scale of 1:110
Scale of 1:50
Feet
Metres

NORTHERN BLACK POLISHED WARE
SUBSIDIARY RAMPS
WALL & PERIOD I, STRUCTURAL, PERIOD II

CONTINUED FROM TOP RIGHT

NATURAL SOIL
in one plumb and the last fourteen form the corbel. At either end of this passage was a pair of slits, 3.5 ins. wide and 3.5 ins. set inside the walls, into which planks may have been inserted (Pl. 22 A). In the curved wall, two man-holes (possibly ventilators) (2 ft. × 2 ft.) divide the extant length into three nearly equal parts (Pl. 21 B). It appears to have been a passage and not a drain because the level of the pavement is higher in the middle and has a gradual slope of only 1 in. towards the two ends. There is no opening in the wall in the middle and it could not have received any drain-water from any area. The subsequent filling in the passage, was also not the usual stuff of drains. The passage may have served as a secret underground tunnel.

To this period also belongs Wall 5, running east-west, available to a height of two courses. It is 3 ft. wide and has been exposed to a length of 3 ft.

Wall 7—Available up to a height of 16 courses and with a width of 2 ft. 1 in., it is an isolated structure and its relationship with other contemporary structures cannot be determined.

Stair 1 (Pl. 22 B)—With the existing height of 9 ft. 3 ins. and a width of 4 ft. 5 ins., Stair 1 comprises 16 steps, each consisting of 2 courses of bricks. Each step has a height of 6 ins. and a tread of 7 ins. and the bricks are laid in the English bond. The first ten steps were constructed as a piece in one alignment. The steps lead to a tower probably situated on the southern side of Rampart 2. It may, therefore, be inferred that watch-towers came into existence during this period. The inference is supported by the excavation of another tower in the eastern rampart situated at its northern end (Pl. 10).

SP. III. 12—Wall 8, available to a height of two courses, was built during this period. The curved Wall 6 was also rebuilt for which evidence is furnished by the slit at its southern end. Man-hole 2 of Wall 6 was closed, Stair 1 was repaired and the last five steps added thereto, thus changing its alignment and increasing its width to 5 ft.

SP. III. 13—There was a considerable building activity in this period and a major change in the organisation of defence. Rampart 2 was raised by packing mud yellowish in colour. Revetment 2 was repaired. Walls 9, 10, 11, 12, 12 A and Floor 4 also belong to this period.
Wall 9, with a length and width of 18 ft. and 2 ft. 6 ins. respectively and with a height of 8 courses, partly overlapped the curved Wall 6 of the earlier period. The erection of Walls 10, 11, 12 and 12A brought into being the system of guard-rooms at the top of the rampart, backing a passage, provided with flank walls, from the top to the toe of the rampart (Pl. 24). Walls 10, 12 and 12A formed part of the guard-rooms and Wall 11 served as the northern flank. The guard-rooms may have been flanked by a tower on each side, the existence of which has been noticed in SP. III. 12. The building of the towers, guard-rooms and the flanks completely altered the conception of defence in which they now played as important a role as the revetments and the bastions. With the erection of the guard-rooms with only a ten ft. wide passage at the top of the rampart, this gateway could hardly functioned as a principal gateway of the city, which was now evidently shifted to the north by about 400 ft. and against the northern side of which was built a flank wall\(^1\), measuring 262 ft. in length.

SP. III. 14—To this period belong Walls 13, 13A, 13B, 13C, forming a central room, 12 ft. 4 ins. in length, flanked by one sentry-box on either side, 4 ft. in width. The erection of these three rooms marked the beginning of the plan of guard-rooms which continued till the end (Fig. 4). Wall 11 was rebuilt and Drain 2, available to a length of 18 ft. 6 ins. and with a channel, 1 ft. 4 ins. wide, was laid. Floor 5 also belongs to this period.

End of Rampart 2—Extensive conflagration resulting in the accumulation of a deposit of ash throughout the passage and also the destruction of Revetment 2 offer unmistakable evidence of invasion. The pits cut during this period are packed with ash and charcoal. It is significant that double-tanged arrow-heads have been discovered in large numbers, buried in the ash deposits on Floor 5 as well as in the destructions of Revetment 2. They seem to indicate the source of the destruction.

Rampart 3 and Revetment 3 (Pl. 19)

SP. III. 15—With the construction of Rampart 2 the defences at Kauśāmbi had attained their present dimensions. The construction of Rampart 3 hardly meant any addition to their width and the height was raised only by

\(^1\) I. A., 1954-55, Pl. XXXI.
about 5 ft. Though Revetment 3 was built, the system of defence centering on a mud rampart externally revetted with burnt brick wall was virtually abandoned. The guard-rooms, the flank-walls and the towers at the two sides on the top, now held the key to the defence-complex. To this period belong Revetment 3, Walls 14, 14 A, 15, 16 and Floor 6. The most important discovery of this period was that of a Šyenaciti of the Purusamedha (human sacrifice), described in chapter eight. Walls 13 A and 13 B were also rebuilt. Revetment 3, available to a length of 51 ft., is 74 brick-courses high with a batter of 20°. It is for all practical purposes a wall, 3 ft. in width. The batter was apparently due to the fact that the wall was constructed to repair the brick facings of Revetment 2, destroyed in the invasions that marked the end of SP. III. 14. It is evident that the functional basis of a revetment, as also the principle underlying it, was not correctly understood. Wall 15 is its return wall and does not form a right angle with it. It is also to be noted that the main spine of the Šyenaciti, running north-south, divides the angle into two equal parts.

Walls 14 and 14A enclose a passage, 17 ft. wide, running from the guard-rooms up to the toe of the rampart, opposite the watch-tower, on the other side of the moat and at the southern end of the curtain. These two walls are in one plumb on the inner side, but the outer side was uneven, evidently because the walls were built up to their entire height against the packing of the ramparts. The passage, provided with a floor (Fl. 6) of surkhi, served virtually as a tunnel from the guard-rooms to the toe of the rampart, protected on the two sides by the packing of the ramparts. Walls 13, 13A, 13B, 14 and 14A formed three rooms, the central one being 12 ft. 4 ins. in length and the side ones having a width of 4 ft. each. The passage through the central room was 8 ft. 6 ins. wide. Wall 16, running parallel to Walls 14 and 14 A and exposed to a length of 15 ft. 9 ins., served as a northern flank on the city side.

SP. III. 16—There was no change in the plan. The Walls 13, 13A, 13B, 13C, 14, 14A and 14B were rebuilt, Floor 7 was laid and the only independent construction of the period is a platform, measuring 7 ft. 6 ins. x 6 ft. A number of coins of the Mitras have been discovered from Floors 6 and 7. The period ended with an invasion which has left evidence in extensive burning of the site, forming an accumulation of an ash layer in which are buried fragments of bones and a few pieces of skull. According to the available evidence, the N. B. P. Ware also ended with this period.
Rampart 4

SP. IV. 17—This period witnessed the repair and raising of the rampart, rebuilding of Walls 13A, 13B, 13C, the construction of new Walls 17, 17A, 18, 18A, 19, 20 and also Floor 8. Walls 17 (4 ft. 6 ins. wide) and 17A (3 ft. 6 ins. wide) are available to a length of 50 ft. and enclose the central passage through the ramparts, 31 ft. 6 ins. wide, up to a length of 37 ft. and 25 ft. 6 ins. wide towards the toe further onwards. Walls 18 (4 ft. 3 ins. wide) and 18A (3 ft. 3 ins. wide) are the return walls of Walls 17 and 17A and served as retaining walls of the two mud-packed towers that flanked the guard-rooms. They are available to a length of 13 ft. 6 ins. and 11 ft. respectively, and have stepped foundations on account of the gradient of the towers. Wall 19, now in a collapsed condition, served as the northern flank of the passage through the guard-rooms on the city side.

Wall 20 was built over Wall 13 of the earlier period and formed the southern wall of the guard-rooms. Floor 8 of the period was made of surkhi. Three post-holes, one to the north side of Wall 17 and the remaining two to the south of Wall 17A, which cut through Stair 1 and Wall 11, supported the posts needed for scaffolding in the building of Walls 17 and 17A.

SP. IV. 18—The plan remained unaltered; walls of the earlier period were rebuilt and reused. Floor 9, constructed during this period, bears traces of conflagration, probably due to an invasion indicated by the accumulation of a layer of ash and charcoal. Another floor (Fl. 10) of surkhi was built in this very period.

SP. IV. 19—There was no major change in the plan of this period; all the walls of SP. IV. 18 were rebuilt and a new floor (Fl. 11) was laid.

Walls 13C and 20 furnished the clearest evidence of the three building periods associated with Rampart 4. Of Wall 20, for example, the first six courses belong to SP. IV. 17, the next four with a width of 3 ft. 10 ins. to SP. IV. 18 and the last seven courses at the top with a width of 2 ft. 8 ins. to SP. IV. 19.

At the end of SP. IV. 19 the story of Rampart 4 ended in extensive conflagration and destruction indicating an invasion during which all the buildings were razed to the ground.
SP. IV. 20—This period seems to represent a very important epoch in the life of the city. The height of the rampart was raised for the last time, the ground levelled and the guard-rooms rebuilt on new foundations by the erection of Walls 21, 21A, 21B and 21C. Walls 21 and 21C have a width of 5 ft. and Walls 21A and 21B, a width of 3 ft. 6 ins. and 3 ft. 10 ins. respectively. The central room has a width of 12 ft. 2 ins. with a passage of 8 ft. 6 ins., flanked by two sentry-boxes, the southern one having a width of 6 ft. 3 ins. and the northern measuring 8 ft. 2 ins. Each of these rooms measures 12 ft. 3 ins. in length. Floor 12 is the first floor associated with these constructions. The flank Walls 17, 17A as well as Wall 18 were also rebuilt in this period on the earlier foundations. To the west of the southern sentry-box, was built a flight of steps (Stair 2), available to a height of 11 steps with a tread of 10 ins. and an average rise of 9 ins. (Pl. 23). These steps probably led to a tower on the southern side, retained by Wall 18, now rebuilt. Wall 22, available to a height of five courses and a length of 5 ft., is the only other construction of this period but its relationship with other contemporary structures cannot be determined.

SP. IV. 21, 22, 23 and 24—Without any substantial modification of the plan, the walls of the preceding period were rebuilt and reused and, consequent to the rise in the levels, floors were added, of which Floors 13 and 14 of SP. IV. 21 and IV. 22 respectively have survived.

SP. IV. 24 witnessed destruction on an unparalleled scale. The entire area was burnt down and the buildings were almost razed to the ground. Evidently, it was the result of a violent assault that shook the city to its very foundations. The defences that had served the city from SP. I. 3 to IV. 24 were finally abandoned and henceforth throughout its remaining life, the town was defenceless. The barbed arrow-heads Type (K), which make their appearance for the first time in large numbers, were obviously the instruments of massacre, pillage and unprecedented devastations. It is to be noted that stratigraphically the seals of Toramāṇa and Hūnarājā, discovered in the excavations of Ghoṣitārāma, belong to the period of these destructions.

---

1 I. A., 1954-55, p. 18, Pl. XXXIIIB.
Post-Rampart

SP. IV. 25—Walls 23, 23 A and 24 were constructed during this period and Walls 21 and 21 C were rebuilt with ledges on the older foundations. Walls 23, 23 A and 24, measuring 8 ft., 2 ft. 9 ins. and 5 ft. 3 ins. in length and 4 ft. 7 ins., 4 ft. 6 ins. and 5 ft. 10 ins. in width respectively, were built on the levelled debris of the preceding period. The scheme of guard-rooms was completely abandoned and these new constructions had probably nothing to do with the defences of the city.

MOAT AND ROADS

The Moat (Pls. 26 A and 26 B)

The existence of a moat encircling the ramparts could be clearly deduced on the basis of surface observations even before the excavations. The existence of a tower on the other side of the moat in alignment with the passage through Rampart I and also the guard-rooms has already been noticed. The total width of the moat in this area is 480 ft. and the tower, measuring 142 ft. x 92 ft., is situated at a distance of 275 ft. from the toe of the rampart. The excavations revealed the existence of the channel of the moat at the foot of the rampart and roads of four periods and the bank for a fifth between the channel and the tower, and roads of two periods between the Subsidiary Rampart I and the moat. The roads helped in determining the stratification and the relative chronology of the moat. The roads between the tower and the channel at the foot of the rampart divided the moat into three parts:

(i) a seventy feet wide channel flanked on the two sides by roads, one at the foot of the rampart and the other between this channel and the tower;

(ii) a reservoir of water formed by the approximately 13 ft. high bank to the south and the east of the road and tower and the channel of the moat on the other sides;

(iii) the channel and the reservoir, being joined to the east of the watchtower and also at the foot of the rampart on the northern side of the road, forming, when flooded, a moat 480 ft. wide. Evidently, in normal times, the perennial channel was only about 60-70 ft.
wide and 7 ft. deep. The space between the eastern bank of the channel and the tower on which roads were built normally served as a passage through the main gate. There are two funnel-shaped pits, 6 ft. 2 ins. deep and 8 ft. wide at the top, on the two sides of the channel at the terminations of the roads. These two and the passage through the rampart and the tower are in the same alignment. From their situation and alignment they appear to have held posts that supported an over-bridge across the channel.

In times of emergency the entire moat area could be flooded, the reservoir to the south of the road between the channel and the tower inundating the road and joining the main channel to its north. This step would have been taken obviously in a very grave situation, when the tower to the east of the moat also could not be held and the defenders of the city would have been forced to decide to cut off all communications and seal the impregnable fortress by a 480 ft. wide moat (now 23 ft. deep).

The banks of the moat were revetted with walls built in batter. Two such walls, the earlier belonging to the first period of the moat, 3 ft. 4 ins. wide and 3 brick-courses thick, and the other, now represented by a debris, belonging to Road 5 (now washed), have been laid bare.

The earliest moat (SP.II. 5), coeval with the Subsidiary Rampart 1 and Road 1, was cut through the natural soil, and its channel, at the base of the rampart, was 60 ft. wide.

The banks were overlaid by a deposit of about 2 ft. 10 ins. in thickness when the moat was re-excavated (SP. III. 10). The accumulations subsequent to Moat 1 are pre-N.B.P. Ware and have yielded red ware having types like dish-on-stand and others similar to those from Navdatoli, Painted Grey and Black-and-Red Ware.

The thickness of the deposit over the level of Moat 3 is 1 ft. 10 ins. There is evidence of re-excavation and widening of the moat (SP. III. 11). The re-excavation of the moat coincided with major changes in the building of the defences and there is evidence that the entire area had to be packed in order to raise the level (SP. III. 13). Sifting of different periods is available only in areas near the roads.
Roads (Pl. 25)

Road 1 (SP. II. 5)

On the two sides of the channel between Subsidiary Rampart 1 and the moat and the eastern bank of the moat and the watch-tower, Road 1, 10 ft. wide and about 4 to 6 ins. in depth, coeval with the subsidiary rampart, was laid by cutting through the natural soil. The road was made of small brickbats, gritty material, lime concretions, sherd\s and clay, heavily pounded. The pottery is pre-N. B. P. Ware.

Road 2 (SP. II. 7)

Road 2, 14 ft. wide and 5 ins. in depth, was laid on flood deposits, 2 ft. thick, on Road 1. The material used was similar to that in Road 1.

Road 3 (SP. III. 10)

Road 3, 10 ft. wide and 4 ins. in depth, was laid on an accumulation of 10 ins. in thickness on Road 2. The packing of the road has yielded N. B. P. Ware. The evidence for the road of this period is available only in the area between the eastern bank of the channel and the tower on the eastern side of the moat and not at the foot of the rampart, as the Subsidiary Rampart 2 was built in this area over Roads 1 and 2.

Road 4 (SP. III. 11)

Road 4, 11 ft. wide and 6 ins. in depth, was built on an accumulation, 8 ins. in thickness and full of N. B. P. Ware, over Road 3.

Road 5 (SP. III. 13)

Road 4 was overlaid by a packing of thoroughly rammed mud, blackish in colour and 7 ft. in thickness, which provided the bank of the road of the subsequent period, now almost completely washed out of existence. This packing for the raising of the level of the road became necessary because it was in this period that the guard-rooms were built at the top of the rampart and provided the nerve-centre of the defences. In order to facilitate commu-
KAUSĀMBI 1957-59
SECTION ACROSS GUARD-ROOMS ON EF

Scale of 1:288 Feet
Scale of 1=30 Metres

SOUTH

POST NFC

BLACK POLISHED

NORTHERN POLISHED

PAINTED GREY WARE

PRE-PAINTED GREY WARE

REPAIRS OF E

RAMPART

PIT 1

PIT 2A

PIT 12A

COMPACT CLAY

MAGIA COIN

MIRIYA COIN

PUNCH-MARKED COIN

UNINSUBBED CAST COIN

NORTH

PERIOD III

PERIOD II

PERIOD I

FIG. 4
nication with these guard-rooms, situated at the top, at a height of about 35 ft. from the surface of the toe of the rampart of the preceding period, the raising of the road-level became necessary.

NEW LIGHT ON FORTIFICATION

The excavations have, thus, thrown valuable light on early fortification and its modifications in the successive periods necessitated by changing ideas of defence. This impressive fortification came into being in SP. I. 3. Its similarity with the Harappan defences is obvious. A rampart of mud with sloping sides revetted with a burnt brick wall, battered back to about 30° to 40°, of which the courses are laid in the so-called English bond, leaving footings in successive courses, reinforced by bastions and towers, square in plan, are elements of construction strongly reminiscent of the Harappan citadel. The defences, built on this model, continued from SP. I. 3 to SP. III. 12, during which periods they also made use of a curved entrance, enclosing an underground passage built on corbelled arch. In SP. II. 5 the concept of defence was revolutionised by the construction of a moat round the ramparts, a feature not yet recorded from any Harappan city. Period III. 13 is the next land-mark in the evolution of the defence system: the rampart and the revetments were strengthened by a series of guard-rooms and towers designed to ward off attack on the revetments and the passage enclosed by them, which, by the erection of two flank-walls connecting the guard-rooms with the toe of the rampart, functioned almost like a tunnel running across the defences. By SP. III. 15 the concept of revetments had faded out and vanished completely by SP. IV. 17. From SP. IV. 17 to SP. IV. 24, when the defences finally came to an end, the principle of a rampart with revetment was completely eliminated and the guard-rooms flanked by towers and connected with the base of the rampart with long parallel walls provided the key to the entire defence system. The main gates were screened by mud-bunds serving as curtains and towers to defend the roads through the gateways. The period in which the idea of the construction of screens in front of the main gates was introduced has yet to be ascertained by further excavations.

The Evolution and History of Bricks

In SP. I. 1 and I. 2 only brick-bats have been found which were evidently taken out of earlier structures, not yet excavated, and reused in Floor I (SP. I. 1) and Wall I (SP. I. 2). The high percentage of the complete bricks used in the
succeeding periods, as shown below, can very well be regarded as the index of major building activities in the respective periods:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SP.</th>
<th>I.</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>88%</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SP.</td>
<td>II.</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>92%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SP.</td>
<td>III.</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>80%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SP.</td>
<td>III.</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>87%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SP.</td>
<td>III.</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>79%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SP.</td>
<td>III.</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>82%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SP.</td>
<td>III.</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>85%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SP.</td>
<td>III.</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>84%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SP.</td>
<td>IV.</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>80%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The complete bricks of *SP. I.* 3 measure 20.5 ins. (maximum), 18.5 ins. (minimum) and 19.5 ins. (average) in length; 13 ins. (maximum), 11.5 ins. (minimum—rare) and 12.5 ins. (average) in breadth; and 3.25 ins. (maximum), 2.5 ins. (minimum—rare) and 2.75 ins. (average) in thickness. About 60% of them measure $19.5 \times 13 \times 2.75$ ins. which may be treated as the standard size of bricks in this period. Bricks of another size measuring $20.25 \times 13.5 \times 3$ 25 ins. have also been found but their small percentage seems to indicate that they represent probably an earlier type, not very popular during this period.

The length, breadth and thickness of the complete bricks of *SP. II.* 5 respectively are 20.25 ins. (maximum), 17.5 ins. (minimum), 19.25 ins. (average); 13.5 ins. (maximum), 12 ins. (minimum), 12.5 ins. (average); and 3.25 ins. (maximum), 2.5 ins. (minimum), 2.75 ins. (average). The standard type of this period is the same as that of *SP. I.* 3, and is available to the extent of about 60%. About 10% of the bricks, unknown in the preceding periods, are of smaller size measuring $18 \times 12 \times 2.5$ ins.

The dimensions of the complete bricks of *SP. II.* 8 are 20 ins. (maximum), 18 ins. (minimum), 18.75 ins. (average); 13 ins. (maximum), 11.5 ins. (minimum), 12.25 ins. (average); and 3 ins. (maximum), 2.25 ins. (minimum), 2.5 ins. (average). The standard type of earlier periods continues in this period also to the extent of 40%, but equally prominent is the type ($18 \times 12 \times 2.5$ ins.) introduced in *SP. II.* 5, which now accounts for about 40%.

The complete bricks of *SP. III.* 10 measure 20 ins. (maximum), 17.5 ins.
Lay-out of the Excavated Area

(minimum) and 18 ins. (average) in length; 13 ins. (maximum), 11 ins. (minimum) and 12 ins. (average) in breadth; and 3.25 ins. (maximum), 2.25 ins. (minimum) and 2.5 ins. (average) in thickness. The type measuring $18 \times 12 \times 2.5$ ins., available to the extent of 66%, becomes the arch-type in this period. About 20% of the bricks show a variant of the earlier type measuring, approximately, $19.5 \times 12.5 \times 2.75$ ins. SP. III. 11 also reveals the same picture.

The available data in respect of SP. III. 13 shows that the sizes of bricks varied according to the purpose of the structure in which they were used. Thus the drain of this period has larger size bricks measuring $19.5 \times 12.5 \times 2.75$ ins. whereas in other structures comparatively small bricks have been used. The standard size of the bricks of this period is $17.5 \times 12 \times 2.75$ ins., which is about 40%.

In SP. III. 15 the standard type is the same as SP. III. 13 but the number here rises to 70%. A new type of brick measuring $16.5 \times 11 \times 2.5$ ins. was introduced and used to the extent of 20% in this period.

Henceforward the history of the brick types mainly centres round these two types of SP. III. 15 and shows a gradual reduction in the percentage of the former and a corresponding increase in that of the latter or the new type. Thus in SP. III. 16, III. 17, IV. 19 and IV. 20, the percentage of the former is gradually reduced to 66%, 60%, 32% and 25% respectively, till at last in SP. IV. 24, it becomes negligible. On the other hand, the percentage of the latter type registers a continuous rise—34% (SP. III. 16), 40%, (SP. III. 17), 55% (SP. IV. 19), 70% (SP. IV. 20) and 77% (SP. IV. 24). A new type of brick measuring $15/14 \times 7$ ins. $\times 2.5$ ins. was also introduced in SP. IV. 24.

It is important to note that after SP. IV. 17 when the system of strengthening the ramparts with revetments was abandoned, new structures become very few in number and the percentage of complete bricks continues to be reduced till at last in SP. IV. 25 only brick-bats were used. As such, the ground for arriving at any definite conclusions in respect of the bricks of these periods is not adequate and this is all the more so in view of the fact that the bricks of the early periods appear to have been often reused.

The hallmark of the evolution of bricks over a period of more than a thousand years in the history of Kausambi, is, as the foregoing observations amply reveal, the gradual diminution in the size of bricks from 20.5 ins. to
14 ins. in length, from 13.5 ins. to 11 ins. in breadth and from 3.25 ins. to 2.25 ins. in thickness. However, the abrupt reduction in breadth in the new type (15/14 ins. × 7 ins. × 2.5 ins.) introduced in SP. IV. 24 shows some external influence and sounds a discordant note in the otherwise gradually evolving sequence.
CHAPTER FOUR

TOOLS AND WEAPONS

The Excavations yielded 1115 iron objects out of which about 678 were in a tolerable state of preservation. They comprise about 370 arrow-heads, spears and javelins numbering 58 and the miscellaneous lot of 250 including axes, adzes, knives, razors, nails, chisels, sickles etc. The rest of the pieces were shapeless.

It is noteworthy that small fragments and shapeless bits of iron were discovered as early as SP. I. 3. Objects of distinctive shapes, however, occurred from SP. II. 5 and continued to be used throughout Cultural Period II, but became much more numerous with the beginning of Cultural Period III or the period of the N. B. P. Ware. Scarcity of iron objects with distinctive shapes in Period I may be partly due to the extremely corrosive nature of the material. The occurrence of iron throughout the Painted Grey Ware period has been noted at Álamgirpurá, (District Meerut). Lumps of iron, ore and slags, are also reported from the uppermost levels of Period II (P. G. Ware) at Hastinápurá. Recent excavations in the Gangetic Valley thus attest the knowledge of iron much before the appearance of the Northern Black Polished Ware.

Arrow-heads—Iron

The iron arrow-heads belong to eleven different types, viz. (A) with rhombic cross-section; (B) with square cross-section; (C) with rectangular cross-section having two sub-types; (D) with a conical blade and circular cross-section; (E) socketed ones with two sub-types; (F) having a knife-blade and lozenge cross-section; (G) with leaf-shaped blade and lozenge cross-section; (H) with a triangular cross-section; (I) double-tanged having eight sub-types; (J) three-bladed and (K) with barbed blades having four sub-types. Out of the total

number of 370 well preserved arrow-heads, those of the first four types, A, B, C and D, are much more numerous, each represented by 85, 84, 76 and 38 specimens respectively. The next four types, E, F, G and H, though not so numerous, share with the first four a considerable antiquity and prevalence over a wide period of time. Their antiquity, frequent occurrence and the capacity for survival are proofs that they were the product of local effort and had strong and durable roots in the soil.

These eight types, viz. (A) to (H), occur throughout Periods III (N. B. P. Ware) and IV and continue virtually up to the end of the site. Of types (A) and (B), arrow-heads with shorter blades were used earlier and those with longer blades appeared later. On the other hand, (C 2), a variety of type (C), is earlier than (C 1), its shorter variety.

With their highly specialised character the arrow-heads of types (I), (J) and (K) present a sharp contrast to the first eight types noted earlier. Though represented by only 16, 11 and 10 pieces respectively, these three types, unlike the first eight types, have variety of forms and are of sporadic occurrence. The sixteen specimens of type (J), comprising eight sub-types, occur only in one period, namely, at the end of SP. III. 14. A single specimen of type (J) belongs to SP. III. 14 and the rest appear in structural periods associated with Rampart 4. Similarly, of the four sub-types of (K), (K 1) appears in SP. IV. 19 together with type (J) and the other three sub-types, (K 2), (K 3) and (K 4) are confined to the extensive destructions after SP. IV. 24.

The intrusive character of Types (I), (J) and (K) is also borne out by the complete absence of their prototypes not only at Kaušāmbi but also in the entire Gangetic Valley. The multiplicity of their sub-types is also a clear proof of a long history antedating their sudden appearance in the Gangetic Valley. It is highly significant that these types appear here as carriers of invasion, death and destruction. Their history has been well documented at Taxila.\(^1\) Evidently, their distinctive nature, their close analogy with those from Taxila and sudden appearance at Kaušāmbi, clearly indicate that they were introduced here by the invaders from north-western regions. The Bactrian-Greeks, the Śaka-Parthians and the Hūnas, to whom Marshall ascribes these three types, are also indicated by the evidence of stratigraphy at Kaušāmbi.

---

Arrow-heads—Ivory, Bone etc.

The arrow-heads made of bone, ivory and horn reveal a history similar to that of iron arrow-heads and appear alongside with them from SP. II. 5 to SP. IV. 25 but their main concentration is in Period III (the Northern Black Polished Ware culture). They belong to five types, viz. (A) with long point and circular cross-section, (B) socketed, (C) with double grooves, (D) bud-shaped and (E) with irregular rectangular cross-section. Types (A) and (B) are the earliest and make their first appearance in SP. II. 5; (C) in II. 8 and (D) and (E) in III. 9. In many cases the tang and the point are clearly emphasized. These arrow-heads were intended for shafts made of reeds, cane etc. In the case of type (C), the grooves were used for fastening the arrow-head to the shaft by strings. The points in certain cases show black stains either due to poison or blood.

Arrow-heads in Literature

Arrow-heads of bone (deer horn) and iron (copper ?) are mentioned in the R. V. The words bāṇa, bunda, śara, śaravī, śāri and śāyaka are of frequent occurrence in the Saṁhitās. The different names may have signified different types or kinds of arrows. Kauṭilya, however, mentions five kinds of arrow-heads, viz. venu, śara, śalākā, dāndāśana, and nārāca, made of iron, bone or wood. According to the A. V. and A. B., an arrow consisted of a point, a socket, a shaft and feathers. The common use and long antiquity of feathers is also indicated by the R. V., which mentions arrow-heads with and without feathers. Poisoning of the tip of the arrow-head seems to have been a common practice. The A. V. prescribes charms to make the poison ineffective and also to serve as antidote against it.

1. आचार्यत्व वा हस्तीचार्ययो वस्त्रा अण्डे मुख | R. V. VI 75. 14-17.
2. R. V. VI. 75. 17.
3. R. V. VIII. 77. 6.
4. R. V. I. 119. 10; X. 178. 3; A. V. I. 3. 1; VIII. 8. 4.
5. R. V. I. 112. 16.
6. R. V. II. 33. 10.
7. Shamasastry, Arthashastra of Kauṭilya, p. 102.
8. A. V. IV. 6. 5.
10. R. V. VI. 75. 17.
The discovery in Periods II and III of iron and bone arrow-heads of different types confirms their antiquity and wide use as evidenced by the Vedic literature.

**Spears and Javelins**

Of the weapons of this category, only 58 pieces were recovered in good condition. They comprise five main types, viz. (A) leaf-shaped with a small blade and lozenge cross-section; (B) with a large flattened leaf-shaped blade and lozenge cross-section; (C) with a solid point, plain tang and square cross-section; (D) with a socketed head and circular cross-section, and (E) with a socket and rectangular cross-section. Type (A) appears to be the earliest, some well preserved specimens being available from SP. II. 7. All the types occur in Period III (N. B. P. Ware).

**Miscellaneous Iron Objects**

Miscellaneous iron objects include axes, adzes, knives, chisels, sickles, nails, iron-rings etc. Most of them evidently were tools used by agriculturists, carpenters and other craftsmen.

Some representative specimens are described below:

*Arrow-heads—Ivory and Bone*

(Pl. 39)

*Type A—Long point, circular cross-section*

   Arrow-head, horn, long fine point, single-tanged, circular cross-section.
   Length 7 cms.

   Arrow-head, ivory, long fine point, single-tanged, circular cross-section.
   Length 8.2 cms.

   Arrow-head, bone, long broken point, single-tanged, semi-circular cross-section.
   Length 9.6 cms.
FIG. 6

Arrow-heads: Iron
Spears, javelins and miscellaneous iron antiquities
   Arrow-head, ivory, long fine point, single-tanged, irregular circular cross-section. Length 7.2 cms.

   Arrow-head, ivory, long fine point, single-tanged, circular cross-section. Length 6 cms.

6. (KSB XIII. I/197-58). III. 16 (?).
   Arrow-head, ivory, long fine black-tipped point, single-tanged, circular cross-section. Length 8.1 cms.

   Arrow-head, ivory (?), fine point, single-tanged, pentagonal section. Length 5.8 cms.

   Arrow-head, ivory (?), long fine point, well-defined tang, circular cross-section. Length 7.6 cms.

   Arrow-head, ivory, long fine black-tipped point, small single-tanged (black-tipped), circular cross-section. Length 7.5 cms.

    Arrow-head, ivory, fine point, single-tanged, irregular circular cross-section. Length 4.9 cms.

_Type B—Socketed_

    Arrow-head, ivory, socketed, fine point, elliptical cross-section. Length 5 cms.

    Arrow-head, ivory, socketed, fine point, circular cross-section. Length 4.9 cms.

    Arrow-head, ivory, socketed, very long fine point, circular cross-section. Length 8.3 cms.

    Arrow-head, ivory, socketed, long fine point, circular cross-section. Length 7.6 cms.

_Type C—Double-Grooved_

    Arrow-head, ivory, long fine point, with two grooves, single-tanged, circular cross-section. Length 8.4 cms.
Arrow-head, ivory, long fine point with two grooves, socketed, elliptical cross-section. Length 7.5 cms.

Type D—Bud-Shaped

Arrow-head, ivory, fine small bud-shaped point, single-tanged, flattened cross-section. Length 5 cms.

Arrow-head, ivory, fine bud-shaped point, single-tanged, elliptical cross-section. Length 5.2 cms.

Arrow-head, bone, fine short bud-shaped point, single-tanged, elliptical cross-section. Length 3.8 cms.

Type E—Irregular Rectangular Cross-section.

Arrow-head, ivory (?), long point, small single-tanged, irregular rectangular cross-section. Length 7.5 cms.

Arrow-head, bone, fine point, small single-tanged, irregular cross-section. Length 5.9 cms.

Arrow-head, bone, long point, long single-tanged, semi-circular cross-section. Length 7.7 cms.

Arrow-head, ivory (?), small point, single-tanged, irregular cross-section. Length 4.1 cms.

Arrow-head, ivory, long fine point, single-tanged, semi-circular cross-section. Length 6.2 cms.

Arrow-head; bone, long point single-tanged, flattened cross-section. Length 5.4 cms.
Tools and Weapons

Arrow-heads—Iron

(Pl. 40 and 41; Fig. 5 and 6)

Rhombic Cross-section

Type A 1.

   Arrow-head, triangle-shaped long blade, rhombic cross-section, single-tanged.
   Length 5.8 cms.

Type A 2.

   Arrow-head, triangle-shaped small blade, rhombic cross-section, single-tanged.
   Length 4.5 cms.

Square Cross-section

Type B 1.

   Arrow-head, short blade, square cross-section, plain tang.
   Length 5.8 cms.

Type B 2.

   Arrow-head, long pointed blade, square cross-section, plain short tang.

Rectangular Cross-section

Type C 1.

   Arrow-head, triangle-shaped blade, rectangular cross-section, single-tanged.
   Length 4.6 cms.

Type C 2.

   Arrow-head, triangle-shaped long blade, rectangular cross-section, single-tanged.
   Length 6 cms.
Circular Cross-section

Type D.

Arrow-head, conical blade, circular cross-section, plain single tang. Length 4.9 cms.

Socketed Arrow-heads

Type E 1.

Arrow-head, conical blade, socketed. Length 5.1 cms.

Type E 2.

9. (KSB XIII. C/886-58). III. 16 (?).
Cf. A variant of this type, from NVT, Excavations at Maheswara and Navdatoli (1952-53) Fig. 110, N. 2054. Also A.I. Nos. 10, 11 (1954-55), Hastināpura, Fig. 31,19.

Arrow-heads—Knife-blade

Type F.

Arrow-head, knife-blade, lozenge cross-section. Length 6.1 cms.

Arrow-heads—Leaf-shaped Blade

Type G.

Arrow-head, leaf-shaped blade, lozenge cross-section, plain tang.
Length 4.5 cms.

Triangular Cross-section

Type H.

Arrow-head, triangular cross-section, plain single tang. Length 5.8 cms.

Double-tanged Arrow-heads

Type I 1.

Arrow-head, leaf-shaped blade, rhombic cross-section, prominent mid-rib running
from shank to blade-point, double-tanged. Length 6.8 cms.
Cf. Marshall, Taxila III. Pl. 165, No. 84.

**Type I 2.**

   Arrow-head, leaf-shaped blade, square cross-section, long shank, double-tanged.
   Length 7.4 cms.

**Type I 3.**

   Arrow-head, leaf-shaped blade, triangular cross-section, double-tanged.
   Length 6.2 cms.

**Type I 4.**

16. (KSB XIII. C/129-59). III. 14 (†).
   Arrow-head, narrowing leaf-shaped blade, lozenge cross-section, long shank, double-
   tanged. Length 8.9 cms.
   Cf. Marshall, Taxila III. Pl. 165, No. 79.

**Type I 5.**

   Arrow-head, knife blade, lozenge cross-section, double-tanged. Length 10.9 cms.
   Cf. Marshall, Taxila III. Pl. 165, No. 77 (Marshall describes the specimen as knife-
   blade head).

**Type I 6.**

   Arrow-head, triangular leaf-shaped blade, lozenge cross-section, long shank, double-
   tanged. Length 5.8 cms.
   Cf. Marshall, Taxila III. Pl. 165, Nos. 73,74.

**Type I 7.**

   Arrow-head, forked-point head, rhombic cross-section, long shank, double-tanged.
   Length 8.2 cms.

**Type I 8.**

   Arrow-head, narrow leaf-shaped blade, rhombic cross-section, short thickened shank,
   double-tanged. Length 5.2 cms.
Three-bladed Arrow-heads

Type J.

   Arrow-head, three-bladed point, plain tang. Length 5.1 cms.

   Arrow-head, three-bladed point, plain tang. Length 3.7 cms.

Barbed Arrow-heads

Type K 1.

   Arrow-head, prominently barbed triangular blade, lozenge cross-section, long shank, double-tanged (?). Length 7.5 cms.
   Cf. Marshall, Taxila III. Pl. 165, No. 74 (barbing is more prominent here than in the Taxila specimen).

Type K 2.

   Arrow-head, projected point flanked by three-barbed blades, triangular cross-section, short tang. Length 5.2 cms.

Type K 3.

   Arrow-head, prominently barbed three-bladed point, triangular cross-section, plain tang. Length 4.6 cms.
   Cf. Marshall, Taxila III. Pl. 165, No. 88 (barbing is more prominent than in the Taxila specimen).

Type K 4.

   Arrow-head, barbed triangular blade with a mid-rib, lozenge cross-section, single-tang (two hooks on the tang). Length 11.5 cms.

   Spears and Javelins—Iron

(Pl. 42. Fig. 7)

Type A.

   Spear, leaf-shaped small blade, lozenge cross-section, short tang. Length 7.1 cms.
Tools and Weapons

Type B.

Spear, large flattened leaf-shaped blade, lozenge cross-section.
Length 12.3 cms.

Type C.

Spear, solid point, square cross-section, plain tang. Length 9.9 cms.

Type D.

Javelin, long point, rectangular cross-section, socketed. Length 23.6 cms.

Type E.

Javelin, socketed head, circular cross-section. Length 7.9 cms.

The same as above. Length 8.4 cms.

Miscellaneous Objects—Iron

(Pl. 43. Fig. 8)

Iron ring or socket (used in a cudgel to make the lower end heavier?). Diam. 5.5 cms.

34. (KSB XIII. C/150-58). IV. 18.
Piece of a door-ring. Diam. 7.2 cms.

Chisel, flat head, square cross-section. Length 6.9 cms.

Knife, concave back, broken handle. Length 10.8 cms.

37. (KSB XIII. C/82-59). IV. 17.
Iron nail, curved head. Length 6 cms.

Iron model of a serpent. Length 12.1 cms.
Sickle with tang, conical cross-section. Length 14.2 cms.

Adze, rounded top, thick sharply tapering blade, socketed. Length 21.5 cms.
Cf. Marshall, Taxila III. Pl. 166 No. 112.

Axe, wide splay, socketed. Length 8.5 cms.
Cf. Marshall, Taxila III. Pl. 166 No. 103.

42. (KSB XIII. C/889-58). IV. 18.
Nail. Length 10.9 cms.

Nail, roundish cross-section. Length 13 cms.

44. (KSB XIII. C/58-59). III. 16.
Door-hook (?), rectangular cross-section. Length 9.1 cms.
CHAPTER FIVE

POTTERY

The pottery is divisible into four classes, each presenting special features characteristic of its particular period.

PERIOD I

Class 1—The pottery of Class 1 can be divided into two principal groups: the first being further divisible into 1A and 1B.

Group 1A—It is a wheel-made sturdy red ware of well levigated clay, uniform in composition, with fine organic material and husk sometimes used as degraisant and having a bright external red slip. The core is orange red, evidently the result of uniform firing at a high temperature. The important types of this group are bowls, dishes, bowl-cum-basins with ridges and prominent grooves, dish-on-stand and vessels of various shapes. In a few cases the rim and the outer side are painted with designs in black.

Group 1B—Allied to the earlier one is this group of equally sturdy sherds of grey-to-buff ware with a black slip on smooth surface, occasionally painted also. Only a few types in this group are known but they are common also to group 1A. Some of the sherds in both these sub-groups show clear use of the technique of paring before firing, which is very well illustrated on the stem of the dish-on-stand type.

Group 2—Another important group of this period consists of sherds, mostly shapeless and in very fragmentary condition, of a coarse black and Black-and-Red Ware. As compared to the first group, the clay is extremely coarse, with a larger quantity of rough organic material and very small pieces of stone used as degraisant, leaving a rugged texture full of small cavities. The pottery was made on slow wheel and fired in an inverted position at a low temperature. Some of the pieces have bright red or black slip. The pottery of this last group, though
contemporary with 1 A and 1 B, seems to represent a different ceramic tradition. Some of the sherds are painted in white on a black-slipped surface.

The types of this period have a wide distribution in the Vindhya plateau and Western India. Out of 85 types from SP. 1 to SP. 5 as many as the following 28 types from Kausāmbi are similar to those from Navdatoli:—types 3, 5, 9, 16, 18, 24, 27, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 36, 37, 38, 40, 41, 42, 46, 47, 52, 59, 61, 73, 78, 79, 84 and 96. They occur at Navdatoli from NVT I to NVT IV, the largest concentration being in NVT II and NVT III. As many as 12 types of this period from Kausāmbi have parallels from Rangpur, generally from RGP II B to III. Kausāmbi has in common another 12 types with Lothal, Mehāgāon, Somanātha, Moṭāmachiālā etc. It is significant that in Western India these types occur in a late Harappan or immediately post-Harappan context and their Harappan parentage is undoubted.

The distribution of the ware of these groups and their frequent occurrence in the Chalcolithic sites of the Deccan and Western India are significant pointers to their antiquity and origin. In the present state of our knowledge a proper definition is not yet possible but link with the Chalcolithic culture-complex and with Harappan traditions seems to be ultimately indicated. One fact about the ware of this period is particularly noteworthy; whereas the analogous types referred to above occur in a purely Chalcolithic context in Navdatoli and Western India, there is definite indication of the existence and use of iron in the later stages of this ware at Kausāmbi.

PERIOD II

Class 2—The pottery of this class is also subdivisible into two distinct groups. The first (2 A) is represented by the distinctive ware known as the Painted Grey Ware which constitutes a homogeneous group represented mainly by bowls and dishes with very thin section, of well levigated clay and with fine fabric. On the grey and sometimes black-slipped surface are painted designs consisting of simple horizontal bands specially on the rim or on the body. Besides, the patterns also comprise groups of vertical or slanting strokes on the body, loops, circles and circle of dots. In certain cases designs in deep chocolate or yellow are executed on brownish red surface. A comparison of these types and painting designs with those from typical Painted Grey Ware sites like Hastināpura and Rūpar and others in western U. P. and the Punjab, shows that Kausāmbi represents a late stage in the history of this ware.
The excavations reveal the continued existence of this ware in the early sub-periods of the N. B. P. Ware as well. The view of a gap between the end of the Painted Grey Ware and the beginnings of the N. B. P. Ware is no longer tenable. This is further confirmed by the continuance of many of the types of the Red Ware associated with the P. G. Ware in the period of the N. B. P. Ware.

Associated with the Painted Grey Ware is also a Black-and-Red Ware. Though produced by the method of inverted firing, it is very much superior to the Black-and-Red Ware of class I, in texture, fabric and firing. Side by side with the finer varieties of this group, coarse black and the coarse Black-and-Red also persist. Occasionally, some pieces also show the application of external chocolate and internal black slip. Painted designs on this ware comprise dots, circle of dots, horizontal incisions and grooves filled with white colour, horizontal lines and grooves in black on chocolate surface and also a group of lines in deep black on a coarse black surface. One piece is painted with stylised human figure. This ware also continues in the early levels of the N. B. P. Ware.

PERIOD III

Class 3—The N. B. P. Ware—The third class consists of the well-known N. B. P. Ware. Some of the earliest specimens of this ware are painted with rim bands, oblique lines on the body, with arches, triangles and other complex motifs in chocolate, reddish yellow and steel-black colour on a lustrous black, silver-coloured or shining yellowish red surface. The continued occurrence of the Painted Grey Ware along with the painted N. B. P. Ware and the occasional similarity in the painted motifs of the two show an unmistakable influence of the painting traditions of the former on the latter. It is, however, noteworthy that the earliest evidence of lustrous black polish is not furnished by the bowls and dishes which this ware shares with the P. G. Ware. The polish occurs for the first time on the external surface of the small vases of red ware.

PERIOD IV

Class 4—The fourth or the last class is characterised by the complete absence of the N. B. P. Ware. The types of this group are commonly found at most of the sites in the Gangetic Valley.
Some important types are described below:

RED WARE

(Figs. 9-12)

Bowls

_Type_ 1—Fragment, bowl, incurved sharpened rim, flaring sides, fine fabric, treated with a wash. I. 2 to III. 9 and with a slight modification also occurs in N. B. P. (III). Cf. Hastinapura (Fig. 15, T 1 and 1 a, p. 54).

_Type_ 2—Rimless hemispherical bowl, fine fabric, coated with white colour on reddish surface on both the sides. I. 2.

_Type_ 3—Bowl, incurved rim, concave tapering side, dotted incised line decorating the outer surface, medium fabric, treated with a red wash. I. 3 to III. 9 and also in N. B. P. (III). The type is reported from NVT (Malwa fabric).

_Type_ 4—Fragment, bowl, flaring sides, pointed edge, medium fabric, treated with a red wash on both the sides. I. 3.

_Type_ 5—Fragment, bowl-cum-basin, two ridges and a prominent groove on the rim, the rim-edge has a slight depression on the upper portion, fine to medium fabric, both sides are treated with a red slip. I. 3. Cf. NVT III (Fig. 29, T 30 and its variants).

_Type_ 6—Bowl, vertical rim distinguished by a marked internal depression, tapering sides, fine to medium fabric, treated both externally and internally with a red slip. I. 4.

_Type_ 7—Fragment of bowl or probably a shallow dish, thick sides, rounded edge, medium fabric, treated with a red slip. I. 4.


_Type_ 9—Fragment, possibly goblet (?), rounded edge, insignificant ledge on outer side, possibly out-going even near the base, medium fabric, treated with a red-ochre wash on both the sides. I. 4 to II. 8. Similar types are reported from NVT III and IV.

_Type_ 10—Bowl, bevelled out rim, tapering sides, medium fabric, treated with a red slip.

II. 5.

_Type_ 11—Fragment of bowl, out-curved edge, convex sides, medium fabric, red slip on both sides, II. 5. but survives even in N. B. P. (III).

_Type_ 12—Bowl or dish (?) thick sides, sharp tapering edge treated both externally and internally with a brick-red slip. II. 5.

_Type_ 13—Similar to type 3 above, bowl, inturned rim, flaring sides, fine fabric, treated with a red slip. II. 5.

_Type_ 14—Fragment, rimless bowl, rounded edge, vertical sides, traces of bright red slip. II. 5 to II. 8.
Type 15—Bowl, broad flat rim, coarse sturdy fabric showing a good deal of mica-particles, treated with a dull red wash on both the sides. II. 5. Similar types are reported from NVT II and III (Fig. 10. T 14 a).

Type 16—Bowl, thick sides, beaded out rim, flat base, sturdy fabric, devoid of any slip or wash. II. 5. Similar types are reported from NVT III and IV.

Dishes

Type 17—Shallow dish externally beaded rim, decorated with finger-tip-depressions at the top, sagger base, medium to coarse fabric, treated with a bright red slip on the inner surface. I. 3 to II. 5.

Type 18—Fragment, possibly dish, slight carination at the shoulder, squared edge, slightly flared, both the surfaces treated with a red-ochre wash, core compact and light brown. I. 4. The type occurs at Moṭāmachiṭṭā I, RGP III, Amrā II and NVT III and IV.

Type 19—Fragment of the rim of a dish, convex sides rounded edge, recurved sides, bulging near the base, core compact, treated with a red slip, black polish on the interior. I. 4.

Type 20—Dish, slightly incurved featureless rim, medium fabric, treated with a red slip. I. 4.

Type 21—Variant of the above but differs in having almost vertical sides. I. 4 to II. 5.

Type 22—Fragment of dish with squat sides, bulging near the base, fine to medium fabric, treated with a brick-red slip on both the surfaces. I. 4.

Type 23—Variant of T 19, convex sides, rounded edge, core blackish, indifferently fired, surfaces blotchy. I. 4 to II. 7.

Type 24—Dish (dish-on-stand ?) flared sides, squared edge, ridge on the inner surface, outer surface blotchy, dull red compact core. II. 5. Reported from NVT III (Fig. 33. T 37 and its variants).

Type 25—Shallow dish, out-turned rim decorated with oblique finger-tip-depressions, medium to coarse fabric, treated with a red slip. II. 5.

Type 26—Dish-cum-basin with rounded edge, double grooves on both the sides, ridged shoulder, coarse fabric, traces of red-ochre-wash on both the sides. II. 8.

Pans (karāhīs)

Type 27—Fragment of pan-cum-dish (?) with a knobbled vertical handle, a prominent shallow groove on the outer side of the rim, cordon at the junction of the rim and the body, fine fabric, treated with a bright red wash, and traces of burning on the rim. II. 5. The type occurs at NVT II and III and RGP II B and II C (but no handles were found).
Type 28—Fragmentary, similar to above but handle replaced by lug, fabric medium, both sides red slipped, uncommon type. II. 5.

Type 29—Fragment of a pan with a vertical handle, marked grooves on the outer side of the rim, coarse sturdy fabric, bright red-washed surfaces. II. 5.

Type 30—Fragment, flat pan (or dish ?), internally beaded rim, coarse fabric, core blackish. II. 5. The type is also reported from NVT II-IV.

Lid

Type 31—Lid with flaring rim, handle in the centre and decorated with zigzag incised design on the inner side, traces of burning on the edge, medium fabric, the exterior treated with a red slip. II. 8. A similar type in dish occurs in Malwa fabric at NVT III and IV.

Beaker

Type 32—Fragment of a beaker (?), flaring sides, medium fabric, red-slipped exterior II. 7. Similar types are reported from RGP II. B, Somanætha II and NVT III.

Type 33—Beaker (?) with squared edge, flaring sides and flat base, medium fabric, exterior with red wash, indifferently fired, occurs from packing of Rampart 2. Comparable to beaker types of RGP II. B and II. C., NVT III and NVS III.

Dish-on-stand

Type 34—Fragment, dish or dish-on-stand? with rounded rim, prominent shallow groove on the outer surface just below the rim, forming a cordon at the junction of the body and the rim, treated with a bright red slip; on the rim traces of burning and painting (?). II. 5. Reported from NVT II and III (Fig. 32. T 36 b), RGP II B and II C and Mehagæon.

Type 35—Fragment, flat dish or dish-on-stand, with angular sides, bluntly carinated shoulder, medium fabric, core porous, treated with a red wash on both the surfaces. II. 7.

Type 36—Fragment, stem of a stand, comparatively thick and small, concave from within, coarse fabric, core porous, dull red-washed exterior and blackish interior. I. 3. The type occurs in RGP II B and II C (?) and NVT II and III.

Type 37—Fragment, tall hollow stem of a dish-on-stand, grey ware, vertical trimmings on the outer side and marked depressions on the inner side, fine grey fabric, core compact and ashy grey. I. 4. The type exists at NVT II and III.

Type 38—Similar to above, thick sturdy red ware, weakly-grooved interior, dull red-washed exterior. II. 5. The type is reported from NVT II and III.

Type 39—Fragment of ringed base with a short-footed concave base, coarse fabric, core gritty, porous, external red wash. II. 7. The type is reported from RGP II B.
Type 40—Fragment, base of dish-on-stand, hollow base upturned beaded edge, medium fabric, bright red-slipped outer surface. II. 8. The type occurs in NVT II–V (Fig. 28, T 29) and RGP II B.

Basins

Type 41—Basin, externally clubbed rim, coarse fabric, showing a good deal of mica-particles, more on the outer surface, red-slipped surface. I. 3. Similar type is available at NVT II–IV (Fig. 30, T 31).

Type 42—Fragment, dish-cum-basin with bevelled-in rim, coarse fabric, gritty core with good deal of mica and lime particles, red slip on both the sides. I. 4. The type is reported from NVT II–IV and RGP II B.

Type 43—Fragment of basin with nail-head rim, medium fabric, devoid of slip or wash. I. 4. Reported from RGP II C.

Type 44—Fragment, basin, externally chamfered rim, fine fabric, treated with a bright red slip below the lower portion of the rim on the inside and ordinary red wash on the remaining surface. I. 4.


Type 46—Fragment, carinated basin with sloping-in sides rounded edge, and ledged shoulder, dull red coarse fabric, both the surfaces red-washed. I. 4 to II. 8. The type is reported from NVT IV.

Type 47—Fragment of a basin with an out-turned rounded rim, coarse fabric, red wash on both the sides; uncommon type. II. 5. Cf. NVT II, III (Fig. 10, T 14 A and 14 B). The type is also reported from Alamgirpura and Lothal II B.

Type 48—Fragment of a basin with an out-turned internally corrugated rim, a groove at the junction of the rim and the body on the outside, grey core and red-ochre slip. II. 5.

Type 49—Fragment of a basin with externally flanged and internally grooved rim, medium to coarse fabric and red-ochre slip. II. 5.

Type 50—Fragment of basin, externally clubbed and internally grooved rim, fine to medium fabric, both the surfaces treated with a dull red slip. II. 5.

Type 51—Fragment of a basin with externally beaded rim and grooves on the external side of the body, coarse fabric, both the surfaces red-washed. II. 7.

Type 52—Basin with an inturned obliquely-cut rim and convex sides, fine fabric, treated with red slip internally and externally. II. 8. Comparable to NVT III (Fig. 21, T 23 g).
Vessels

Type 53—Miniature vase, out-turned featureless rim, concave neck, fine fabric, treated with a red wash. I. 2.

Type 54—Fragment of pot, internally cut rim, concave neck, coarse fabric, both the surfaces treated with a red slip. I. 4 to II. 5.

Type 55—Fragment, high-necked vessel of dull red ware, collared rim distinguished by a groove on the inner side, medium fabric, red-washed surface. I. 4 to III. 9.

Type 56—Fragment, vessel, thickened out-turned rim distinguished by an internal groove, coarse fabric, red-slipped sides. I. 4.


Type 58—Fragment, vessel, convex rim, concave neck, fine fabric. I. 4 to II. 7.

Type 59—Fragment, vessel, beaded-out rim, high concave neck, globular body (?), undercut rim, coarse fabric more akin to Malwa fabric, bright red-washed surfaces. II. 5 to III. 9. The type is reported from RGP II C and III. Somanâtha III and NVT I-IV (also found in Jorwe fabric).

Type 60—Fragment of pot, an out-turned beaded rim having a sharp depression in the middle, constricted neck, coarse fabric, grey core. II. 5 to III. 9. The type is reported from RGP III (?) and NVT.

Type 61—Fragment of storage vessel, beaded out rim and grooved constricted neck, coarse fabric. II. 5. The type is reported from RGP II B, II C and NVT II and III.

Type 62—Fragment of jar, dull red ware, a vertical externally ridged rim, fine fabric, thin section, one of the common types, occurs along with its variants at all the important sites of the Gangetic basin, viz. Hastinâpuras, Ahichchhatrâ, Jhûnî, Bhitâ, Vaiśâli and also at Taxila. II. 5 to III. 9.

Type 63—Fragment of rim of vessel with an obliquely cut rim, coarse fabric, core burnt-black, gritty, treated with a red wash. II. 5 to III. 9.

Type 64—Fragment of storage vessel of dull red ware, externally collared rim, coarse fabric, ill-baked, gritty porous core. II. 5 to III. 9.

Type 65—Fragment of vessel, nail-head, flaring out neck, fine to medium fabric. II. 5 to III. 9.

Type 66—Fragment of vessel, externally bevelled rim, straight sides, slightly convex near the base, coarse fabric, grey core, bright red slip. II. 5.

Type 67—Fragment, dull red ware, slightly out-curved nail-head rim, concave neck, medium fabric, red wash. II. 5 to III. 9.
**Pottery**

*Type 68*—Fragment, elongated globular vessel with a rounded rim, insignificant neck, fine to medium fabric. II. 5.

*Type 69*—Fragment, vessel with an out-turned externally thickened rim and slightly concave neck, fabric coarse, red wash. II. 5 to III. 9.

*Type 70*—Fragment of a pot with a rounded, internally beaded and undercut rim, vertical neck, fine fabric, well levigated clay, red wash. II. 5 to III. 9. Reported from RGP II B.

*Type 71*—Fragment, elongated globular vessel, externally collared rim having a pronounced external rib and a constricted neck, fine fabric, indifferently fired, red slip on both sides. II. 5 to III. 9. Reported from NVT II–IV and RGP III.

*Type 72*—Fragment, straight neck, an out-curved externally collared rim, thickened above the junction of the neck and the body, fine to medium fabric. II. 5 to II. 7.

*Type 73*—Fragment, vessel, externally thickened rim, concave neck, coarse fabric, red slip. II. 5. The type is reported from NVT II–IV and RGP III.

*Type 74*—Fragment, vessel, flaring rim, medium fabric, red slip. II. 5.

*Type 75*—Fragment, vessel, an out-curved externally banded rim, short neck, coarse fabric, treated with a red wash. II. 5 to II. 6.

*Type 76*—Fragment, vessel, almost vertical featureless rim distinguished by a prominent deep external channel, insufficiently baked. II. 5.

*Type 77*—Fragment, pot, slightly out-turned externally beaded rim, expanding sides, constricted neck, fine fabric, red wash. II. 5.

*Type 78*—Fragment, storage vessel, slight depression on inner side, externally beaded rim, concave neck, coarse fabric, blackish core. II. 5 to II. 6. The type is reported from RGP II B, II C, Aṭkọta and Sultānpur (Late Harappan) and NVT II–IV.

*Type 79*—Fragment, pot, oblique rim, insufficiently fired. II. 5. The type is reported from RGP III, Somānātha III and NVT I–IV.

*Type 80*—Fragment, pot, thickened rim, medium to coarse fabric, red wash. II. 5 to II. 8.

*Type 81*—Fragment, vessel, thickened nail-head rim distinguished by a groove on the inner side and a sharp outer edge, high concave neck, medium fabric, ashy black core, red slip. II. 5.

*Type 82*—Fragment, short-necked vessel, clubbed and internally grooved rim, concave neck, medium fabric. II. 5 to III. 9.
Type 83—Fragment, globular vessel, weakly grooved sides, flat base, fine fabric, compact core, treated with a red slip on both the sides. II. 5. Reported from RGP II A, II B and II C.

Type 84—Fragment, elongated globular vessel, externally vertical banded rim having a prominent ridge at its junction with the neck, coarse fabric, balckish core, dull red wash. II. 5 to III. 9. The type is also reported from NVT II-IV and RGP III.

Type 85—Fragment, pot, sharpened externally cordoned rim depressed in the middle, fine fabric, red wash. II. 5 to III. 9.

Type 86—Fragment, pot, internally slightly concave rim, short neck, expanding sides, fine to medium fabric, red wash on both the sides. II. 5 to early NBP levels.

Type 87—Gourd-shaped pot, outcurved (externally collared ?) rim, concave neck, sides with interior corrugations, medium fabric. II. 5 to N.B.P. It was extremely popular in the Gangetic Valley and also in Western India.

Type 88—Fragment, storage vessel, an out-turned clubbed rim, externally grooved neck, coarse fabric showing a good deal of mica and lime particles, both the surfaces treated with a red-ochre wash. II. 5. The type is reported from RGP II C and NVT I–IV.

Type 89—Fragment, vessel, bud-shaped rim, grooves on both the sides, medium fabric. II. 6. The type is reported from Lothal and Ālamgīrpara.

Type 90—Fragment, storage jar, externally beaded and internally grooved rim, coarse fabric, blackish core, bright red slip. II. 6.

Type 91—Fragment of a pot with externally bevelled rim, medium fabric. II. 6.

Type 92—Fragment, vessel, externally bevelled rim, medium fabric. II. 6.

Type 93—Fragment, pot, nail-head rim internally grooved, an internal depression at the junction of the rim and the neck, fine to medium fabric. II. 6 to II. 7.

Type 94—Fragment, pot, collared rim having a marked, wide depression on the exterior in the middle, neck concave, medium fabric. II. 6 to II. 7.

Type 95—Fragment, pot, slightly out-curved externally bud-shaped rim, grooved neck, fine fabric, treated with a red wash. II. 6 to III. 9.

Type 96—Fragment, storage vessel (?) bevelled-in and externally convex rim, comparatively fine fabric, bright red slip. II. 6 to early N.B.P. period. The type is reported from NVT II–IV (Fig. 61. T 86 b).

Type 97—Fragment, pot, externally double-grooved collared rim, concave neck, medium fabric. II. 7 to III. 9.
Type 98—Fragment, pot, externally grooved round collared rim distinguished by a prominent internal depression, high and slightly concave neck, indifferently fired, red wash. II. 7 to III. 9 but in modified form survives even in N.B.P. period (III).

Type 99—Fragment, pot, flaring rim straightened near the top, fine fabric. II. 7 to III. 9 but fairly common in N.B.P. period (III).

Type 100—Fragment, storage jar, coarse fabric, burnt blackish core, red wash. II. 7 to III. 9.

Type 101—Fragment, pot, out-turned squarish externally thickened rim, short vertical neck, thickened at the mid-portion, medium fabric, unevenly fired. II. 7.

Type 102—Fragment, jar, out-turned featureless rim having an insignificant ridge, fine fabric. II. 7 to III. 9.

Type 103—Fragment, vessel, externally elliptical collared rim, coarse fabric, gritty core, indifferently fired, blackish interior. II. 7.

Type 104—Fragment, vessel or bowl, flaring sides, rounded edge, fine fabric, red wash. II. 7.

Type 105—Fragment, pot, bulbous edge or bowl with flat top, thickened rim, medium to coarse fabric, red wash. II. 7.

Type 106—Fragment, pot, externally sharp collared rim, neck not well defined, fine fabric, bright red slip. II. 7 to III. 9.

Type 107—Fragment, elongated vessel, squarish externally vertical collared rim, undercut carinated neck, sides flaring towards base, coarse fabric, gritty core, indifferently fired, red exterior and grey interior. II. 7 to III. 9.

Type 108—Fragment, vessel, externally beaked rim, coarse fabric, blackish core. II. 7.

Type 109—Fragment, pot, out-turned externally beaked rim, externally grooved vertical neck, medium fabric. II. 7.

Type 110—Fragment of a small vessel, out-turned featureless rim, short neck, fine fabric. II. 7.

Type 111—It is a variant of Type 83. II. 7.

Type 112—Fragment, storage jar, slightly incurved externally thickened rim, concave neck, coarse fabric, blackish core, bright red slip. II. 8.

Type 113—Fragment, vessel, externally bud-shaped rim, fine fabric, red wash. II. 8.

Type 114—Vase (?) outcurved externally collared rim, short neck, fine fabric, externally red ochre-washed. II. 8.
Type 115—Fragment, vessel, outcurved (banded ?) rim, concave neck, medium fabric. II. 8 to N. B. P. (III).

Type 116—Fragment, jar, flat-topped externally ledged rim, distinguished by an external channel, fine fabric. II. 8.

Type 117—Variant of T 96 but squat rim. II. 8. Fabric more akin to Malwa fabric i.e. with a thick red slip.

Hāndī (Cooking-Vessels)

Type 118—Fragment, hāndī, sharply out-turned rim, carinated neck, prominent ledge at the junction of the rim and neck on the interior, red slip on both the surfaces. I. 3 to III. 9.

Type 119—Fragment, rimless and neckless hāndī, fine fabric, red slip on the exterior and greyish interior, I. 4 to II. 8. The type is common in N.B.P., Grey and Black-and-Red Ware of early historical period at Nevasā.

Type 120—Fragment, hāndī, nail-head rim, medium fabric with a burnt exterior (as a result of cooking). II. 5.

Type 121—Fragment, hāndī, out-turned rim, medium fabric, burning marks on both the sides. II. 7.

Type 122—Fragment, broad hāndī, out-turned rim rounded at the top, short neck, coarse fabric. II. 7.

Black-and-Red Ware (Fig. 12)

Type 123—Fragment, jar, externally double-banded rim, fine fabric, blackish core. II. 7.

Type 124—Fragment, vessel, sloping sides, corrugated, dull red exterior, ashy interior, coarse fabric. II. 7.

Type 125—Fragment, pot, externally thickened bevelled rim, coarse fabric, blackish core. II. 7.

Type 126—Fragment, pot, nail-head rim, straight neck, fine fabric, not well fired, blackish core, rare type. III. 7.

Type 127—Fragment, internally clubbed and externally oblique edged rim, vertical long neck, coarse fabric, core and interior blackish, bright red slip. II. 8.

GREY WARE

(Fig. 13)

Bowls

Type 1—Shallow bowl of grey ware, featureless rim, flaring sides, burnt blackish core, dark black slip. II. 5 to II. 7.
Pottery

Type II—Bowl of grey ware, sharpened vertical featureless rim, grey core, black slip on both the sides. II. 5 to II. 7.

Type III—Bowl of polished grey ware, obliquely cut rim, convex sides, grey core, treated with a black slip both internally and externally. II. 5.

Type IV—Bowl of grey ware, bevelled-in rim, vertical edge, grey core, traces of black slip on both the sides. II. 6.

Type IVa—Bowl of grey ware, bevelled-in rim, flaring sides, grey core, devoid of any slip. II. 6.

Dishes

Type V—Dish of grey ware, vertical featureless rim, grey core, sides bulging near the base, treated with a black slip on both the sides. II. 5 to II. 7.

Type VI—Dish, rim flattened at the top, convex sides, blackish core, treated with a jet black slip on both the sides. II. 5.

Type VII—Dish, featureless rim, sloping-in sides, jet blackish core, treated with a black slip on both the sides. II. 6 to II. 7.

Type VIII—Dish of polished grey ware, rounded edge, convex sides. II. 5.

Type IX—Dish of grey ware, internally grooved rim, slightly carinated sides, fine fabric, grey core, treated with a black slip on the exterior only. II. 6 to II. 7.

Type X—Dish of polished grey ware, bevelled rim, fine fabric, treated with a black slip. II. 6.

Type XI—Dish, rim grooved on both the sides, grey core, blackish exterior and interior. II. 7.

Type XII—Basin, incurved, externally collared rim, medium fabric, blackish exterior. II. 5.

Type XIII—Basin, incurved, externally round rim, fine fabric, blackish exterior as well as interior. II. 6 to N.B.P. (III).

Type XIIIa—Variant of the above but differs from the main type in having an elliptical collared rim, fine fabric. II. 6 to N. B. P. (III).

Type XIV—Dish, featureless rim, oval sides, grey core. II. 7.

Type XV—Dish of plain grey, an out-curved sharpened rim, medium fabric, without any slip. II. 5 to II. 7.
Type XVI—Dish, slightly incurved featureless rim, straight sides, thickened in the mid-portion, sagger base, bluntly carinated near the base with a prominent rib on the carination, medium to coarse fabric, grey core, treated with a black slip on both the sides. II. 6 to II. 8, also survives in the N. B. P. period (III).

Type XVII—Dish, externally beaded out rim, medium fabric, grey core, blackish interior and slaty exterior. II. 7.

PAINTED GREY WARE

(Pl. 50 Fig. 14)

1—Fragment of a dish, body painted in black in a broad zone. II. 5.

2—Fragment of a dish, fine fabric, painted in black in thick zone at the junction of the side and the base. II. 5.

3—Fragment of a dish, horizontal rim-band in black on the outside. II. 5.

4—Fragment, painted externally in black, indistinct design looking like loops emanating from circles. II. 5.

5—Fragment of a bowl, body painted in black with dots and loops. II. 7.

6—Fragment of a dish, thick fine section, rounded edge, globular body, painted in blackish grey on outer surface with oblique parallel bands in groups of two. III. 9.

7—Fragment of a dish, fine fabric, upper part painted, thick band in black at the end of the painted zone. III. 9.

8—Fragment of a bowl, fine fabric, painted in black on the interior with horizontal rim-band above a group of oblique bands and on the outside with a horizontal rim-band and dots. III. 9.

9—Fragment of a bowl, horizontal band in black in the middle of the body. III. 9.

10—Fragment of a bowl, sides painted with loops in ashy grey. Destruction pit of III. 10.

PAINTED BLACK-AND-RED WARE

(Pl...5)

1—Fragment, black outside and red inside, grooves and parallel horizontal incisions filled with white colour. II. 5. (Pl. 51, 1).

2—Fragment of a hāndī, interior ashy grey, exterior chocolate red; the junction of the neck and the body decorated with horizontal line and dots and elongated loops in black on the body. II. 5. (Pl. 54, 1).
3—Fragment of a dish, black coarse core, black slip on both the sides, painted in white with a stylised human figure. II. 5. (Pl. 51, 2).

4—Fragment of dish or bowl, coarse fabric, exterior decorated with dot-like incisions filled with white and enclosed within a circle in white colour. II. 7. (Pl. 51, 3).

5—Fragment with an external chocolate and internal black slip. Painting in black in lines and dots on the exterior. From destruction of Rampart I after III. 9. (Pl. 51, 4).


7—Fragment of a hāṇḍī, coarse black inside and outside, exterior decorated with vertical bands in black. III. 14. (Pl. 51, 6).

PAINTED RED WARE

(Pl. 52)

8—Sherd of sturdy red ware, painting in black over bright chocolate surface. II. 5.

9—Sherd of sturdy red ware, painting in black over bright chocolate external surface. II. 7.

10—Fragment of a sturdy red ware, smooth and well finished exterior, painted in black with a floral design. II. 8.

11—Fragment of a bowl, rim painted in black with band and body with oblique bands. II. 8.

12—Fragment, red ware, body painted with vertical bands. III. 9.

INCISED RED WARE

(Pl. 53)

1—Fragment, outer surface decorated with symmetrical ridges. II. 7.

2—Fragment, body decorated with parallel channel-like depressions. II. 8.

3—Fragment of hāṇḍī, appliqué thick band of clay round the neck, the lower fringe cut into saw-tooth pattern; the band was applied before firing. II. 8.

4—Fragment, outer surface decorated with symmetrical ridges forming channel like depressions. II. 8.

5—Fragment of a band, decorated with oblique parallel cord-patterns forming grooves in-between. II. 8.
INSCRIBED POTTERY

(Pl. 54)

[Inscribed pottery is not very common. The graffiti consists of vertical or oblique strokes scratched after firing.]

1—Fragment (of a dish-on-stand?) with signs engraved after firing. II. 5.

2—Fragment with three signs one of which resembles a fish (?). II. 6.

3—Fragment with six marks one of which is a combination of three oblique strokes, II. 7.

PAINTED AND INCISED N. B. P. WARE

(Pl. 55. Fig 15)

1—Fragment of a jar, beaded out and externally grooved rim, corrugated neck, internally painted with black horizontal band from which several vertical bands are suspended. III. 10.

2—Fragment of a carinated hāndī, painted with reddish yellow band at the carination. III. 10.

3—Dish, painted on both the sides, on the outside a rim-band, body divided by thick parallel bands, the space between the two bands being filled by a cross enclosed within arcs; painting in steel black colour on a dark drab polished surface. On the interior parallel vertical bands in pairs of two, one suspended from a horizontal band at the rim, painted in bright black on bright red surface. III. 10.

4—Sherd, incised with circle divided into triangles, trapezium and six-armed Svastika-like patterns at the junction of the triangle, trapezium and small semi-circles at the circumference. III. 11.

5—Fragment of a bowl, incised externally with palm-tree pattern. III. 15.

6—Sherd, painted on a reddish yellow surface in black on both the sides; on one side oblique bands, one of which merges into a semi-circle; loops in black issuing forth from the other black band. III. 15.

7—Sherd decorated with incised chequre pattern. III. 15.

8—Fragment of a small vase, steel black external surface painted in reddish yellow with three parallel horizontal bands, a number of parallel vertical bands suspended from the lowest one; the inside of the fragment is plain grey. III. 15.
9—Rim-fragment of a bowl, painted on both the sides with reddish yellow colour, on the exterior horizontal black thin bands. III. 15.

10—Fragment of a bowl, thin vertical rim, painted externally with a dot above horizontal line. III. 16.
CHAPTER SIX

TERRACOTTA FIGURINES

Excavations yielded 323 human and animal terracotta figurines, besides a large number of fragmentary parts of the body. The human figurines are divisible into three main groups—I. early hand-made, II. mould-made and III. a later group of hand-made figurines, showing occasionally a combination of both the techniques. Group I consists of figurines in grey (Pl. 44, no. 2), N.B.P. (Pl. 44, no. 1) and dull red ware bordering on grey (Pl. 44, no. 3). The neck forming a perforated tenon (Pl. 44, nos. 1 and 2) permitted the heads to swing from side to side. Nos. 4 to 6 (Pl. 44) were produced by joining together a number of separately prepared pieces and were finally coated with lime. The modeller invariably made use of applique decorations. The figurines, Pl. 44 nos. 3, 4, 5, 6 and 7, evidently represent a female deity, probably Mother Goddess, very popular in the Gangetic Valley.

Group II (Pls. 45, 46) is represented by figurines produced generally by a single shallow mould. They share with the contemporary art in stone (2nd-1st century B.C.) stylization and archaic character, the representation being conceptual rather than realistic.¹ They have also a marked family likeness to the contemporary art, in dress, ornaments and decorations.

The earliest specimen occurs in SP. III. 1⁴, but the group is generally distributed in SP. III. 15, 16 and IV. 17.

Group III (Pl. 47) consists of hand-made figurines. They differ from the hand-made figurines of Group I in theme, technique and general character. Unlike those of Group I, the figurines of this group are figures in the round, the human feature being portrayed with full detail as in the sculptures of the Kušāna and Gupta periods. The facial features in many cases are outlandish; the coroplast

was probably giving expression to foreign ethnic types. All these heads have tenons, which were meant to be inserted into hollow cylindrical bodies.

Some representative specimens are described below:

**Early Hand-Made** (Pl. 44, nos. 1-6)


N.B.P. human head, receding forehead; broad, arched nose, tip disproportionately high; eyes and mouth shown by reddish yellow colour; ears absent and neck with a groove at the base represented by a perforated tenon to enable the head to swing from side to side. Grey core with bright black polish.


Human head in grey, receding forehead, nose formed by pinching in one continuous projection with the head; applique round eyes set in depressions shown by incisions; prominent cheek bones and chin, hanging lower lip, depression round the mouth—all combine to give it a simian appearance. Tenon with transverse and horizontal perforations forms the neck, evidently to affix it to the body and to enable it to move from side to side, and up and down. Grey core with grey slip.


Female figurine with bird-like face formed by pinching the clay. Forehead, eyes, mouth, lips undigitated; horizontally extended arms formed by pinching the clay and end in points without indication of hands and fingers; breasts worked out in applique; broken at the waist. Fine red clay with red colour.


Female figurine with oval face, prominent forehead, well-shaped and graceful nose, cheeks and lips; applique heavy round breasts, nipples also shown; very elaborate applique headgear, the fringes of which on the forehead are decorated by a thin arched border of clay from which are suspended two circular buttons of clay; applique heavy plano-convex ear-rings, necklace shown like a choker by a flat band, broken at the navel. Red clay with lime coating.


Female figurine, oval face, prominent forehead, graceful eyes and nose, fleshy cheeks and lips, bicornate head-dress forming two prominent volutes having lateral perforations. The hair is decorated with a semi-circular chain ending in two circular buttons; a tabular ear-ring in the right, three-tiered circular ear-ring in the left ear and a choker with indentations round the neck are the ornaments displayed on the body. Red clay with lime coating.

Fragment of a (female?) figurine, only body below the navel and parts of the legs available, legs taper but are shown completely separate, the left leg is preserved up to the knee and the cloth around the waist is exaggerated; loosely hanging girdle is made by affixing thick clay decorated with a number of circular bosses. Red clay.

For 4, 5 and 6 cf. Coomaraswamy, IPEK (1928), group 2 type I, pp. 67 ff, Pl. I.5.6; Pl. VII. 51, and Hastinapura, A.I. (1954, 55), 10, 11. Pl. XXXVI. 1. 2 and 5.

Mould-Made (Pls. 45 and 46)


Female figurine, smiling oval face, prominent forehead, eyes shown by incision, well-shaped nose, depression round the mouth, lips parted, chin brought into relief by a cut below lower lip, prominent round breasts, hair arranged in braids, decorated at the forehead with double chain of pearls terminating in two circular buttons, hanging ear-rings and necklace, folds of the heavy drapery shown by parallel oblique grooves. Single mould, dull red clay coated with lime.


Female figurine, round face; forehead, eyes, nose, cheeks and lips shown distinctly. Bicornate head-dress arranged in two volutes, the right one slightly tilted. Circular ear-rings with tassels, beaded necklace with a pendant and channavira decorate the body. The figure is set in a border of rosace. Red clay with bright red slip.


A Mithuna plaque showing an amorous scene with male on the right and female on the left. The male bears a turban with a knot on the left and small circular ear-rings. The hair of the female is arranged in braids falling at the back. She has large lotus-shaped ear-rings. The borders are decorated with rosaces. Single mould, red clay with bright red slip.


Fragment of a Mithuna plaque. Folds of heavy drapery prominently shown. Single mould. Red clay with red wash.


Female figurine, long face, prominent eye-brows, eyes, pupils, nose and lips shown in clear relief, heavy breasts, hair arranged in braids shown by prominent oblique incisions, turban slightly tilted to left. Its tiers represented by horizontal grooves and attached together by a piece of garment shown by two parallel incisions cutting through the tiers, two circular ear-rings and a sophisticated necklace which has a central boss enclosed within two reversed triratna like objects. Deep single mould. Red clay with bright red wash.

Headless female figurine with torque and necklace, armlet, bracelet, triple-stringed girdle from which tassels are suspended. The figure is set in a border of rosaces. Red clay with bright red slip. Single mould.


Female figurine, long face, prominent forehead, nose, lips and chin. The hair arranged in a knot at the back and tied with a piece of cloth, circular ear-rings and a necklace from which a number of tassels are suspended on the breasts. Single mould. Red clay with a bright red wash.


From sacrificial altar, p. 122.


Female figurine, long face, forehead, eyebrows, eyes narrowed at the ends, pupils, nose, lips and chin shown clearly. The hair is arranged in braids decorated with double semi-circular pearl-strings. On either side of a central lotus medallion five cord-like ribs represent the crown. The upraised right hand is holding a full blown lotus. Single mould. Red clay with bright red slip.


Female figurine, broken at the navel, right hand flexed and resting below the navel, the left at the heavy triple-stringed girdle, bracelets and three anklets, both the ends of dhoti tied behind the legs. Single mould. Red clay with red slip.


Standing human figurine, broken at the naval and the knees, bearing a girdle with four strings the second and fourth of which are made of beads, holding a club-like object in the right hand. Single mould. Red clay.


Headless female figurine, standing akimbo, right leg flexed. The folds of dhoti tied behind are prominently shown. Ornaments consist of torque, necklace, bracelets, double-stringed girdle and three anklets. Single mould. Red clay.


Broken (fEMALE?) figurine, standing, left hand flexed and placed on left thigh, heavy drapery shown by wavy lines, six-chained necklace coming upto the navel, armlets and bracelets prominently shown. Single mould. Red clay.
Hand-Made and Hollow Cylindrical body (Pl. 47)


Human head, broad forehead, eye-brows, eyes and pupils marked by grooves, prominent nose, thick lips, the lower one upturned with two marked depressions at the two ends, inconspicuous chin forming one curve with cheek bones, applique ears, ear-holes indicated by voids. Hair arranged in braids possibly tied in a knot (now broken) with an ornament on the forehead. Tenon broken. Red clay with bright red slip.


Female (?) head, eye-brows and well-made lenticular eyes shown by prominent grooves, pupils indicated by voids. Well-developed nose with broad nostrils, depressions underneath the cheek bones and incisions at the two ends of the mouth and in the middle of the curved lower lip, give the face a graceful expression. Applique ears adorned by circular perforated buttons. Fringes of the hair shown by two arches at the forehead crowned with a projecting turban-roll marked by grooves from the middle of which is suspended a crest jewel. Another ornament shown by arched grooves on the forehead and at the temples. Tenon broken. Red clay with bright red slip.


Human head, eye-brows and eyes shown by prominent grooves, pupils by voids, well-shaped nose and mouth with deep cuts at both ends, applique ears with large ear-lobes decorated with floral designs. An elaborate turban-roll, the twists of which are indicated by vertical grooves with a central crown decorated with double grooves and several arches radiating from them. Tenon broken. Red clay with bright red slip.


Human head, well-shaped forehead, eye-brows and eyes shown by grooves, pupils by voids, equiline nose, traces of moustaches, lips parted and depressed at both ends, chin brought into relief by depression below lower lip, applique ears with large circular buttons showing indentations, hair done into braids tied at the back, decorations at the forehead indicated by grooves and indentations, crest jewel in the centre of the forehead. Tenon broken. Red clay with red slip.


Female head, well proportioned forehead, lenticular eyes, pupils shown by voids, nose with a high ridge; lips slightly parted; cheek bones, cheek and chin form a curve; applique ears with circular buttons decorated by incised patterns. Hair arranged in braids and tied in a knot at the back of the head; a crest jewel suspended at the forehead. Tenon broken. Red clay with red slip.


Male head, broad forehead, eye-brows, eye-lids and eyes shown by prominent grooves, pupils by voids, equiline nose, thick applique moustaches, parted lips, a crescent below the lower
Terracotta Figurines

lip brings the chin into relief, applique ears, a high crown decorated at the base and in the middle by incised bands, similar decoration at the forehead. Tenon broken. Red clay with red slip.


Female head, broad fore-head, eye-brows and eyes indicated by grooves, pupils by voids, thick nose, nostrils shown by two holes, parted lips cut at both ends, applique ears with large circular buttons, parted hair done in braids and tied at the top, a crest jewel at the forehead. Red clay with bright red slip.


Male head, broad forehead, high eye-brows shown by two arched ridges, pupils by voids protruding eyes, broken nose, nostrils depicted by two holes, prominent cheek bones and chin, parted lips cut at two ends, applique ears with cylindrical-circular lobs, hair decorated in seven braids tied into a roll at the back of the neck, decorations of the hair shown by dots, another dot at the centre of the forehead. Tenon broken. Red clay with bright red slip.


Female figurine, elongated face, broad forehead, eye-brows and lenticular eyes shown prominently, pupils shown by grooves, equiline nose, thick protruding parted lips cut at both the ends, applique ears with circular buttons, prominent breasts, broad flat torque round the neck having parallel grooves. Hair arranged in braids and tied in a rectangular knot at the back. Hollow cylindrical body. Red clay with red slip.


Male head, eye-brows, eye-sockets and pupils prominently shown, nose and chin disproportionately formed, thick parted lips, large applique ears with perforated circular buttons, hair done in braids and decorated with perforations at the base. Tenon broken. Red clay with bright red slip.


Seated female figurine, eyebrows indicated by a thick band of clay, goggle-like eyes, pupils indicated by voids, thick parted lips, applique ears wearing circular buttons with indentations, a circular torque represented by a flat band and indentations. The hair arranged in braids and tied in a knot, with a crest jewel at the centre; both hands bearing bracelets, flexed and placed at the knees; feeding a child at the left breast. It seems to be a representation of Hāriti. Red clay with bright red slip.
CHAPTER SEVEN

COINS AND SEALS

COINS

The excavations yielded one hundred and twenty-two coins out of which seventy-six are in a tolerable state of preservation, divisible into the following types:

I. punch-marked coins, II. uninscribed cast coins, III. inscribed cast coins (coins of the Mitra and Magha kings), and IV. miscellaneous coins.

Seven punch-marked coins occurring from SP. III. 10 to III. 14, include four silver coins (Type I A) and three copper coins (Type I B). The uninscribed cast coins have four principal types, viz. (II A) square cast, (II B) round cast, (II C) mythical animal type and (II D) tiny cast. Square cast coins (II A) with elephant before a standard, generally Svastika-topped, on the obverse, and tree in railing, hollow cross, arched hill and taurine, on the reverse, available from II. 5 to III. 16, are represented by twenty-nine well-preserved specimens. The four round cast coins (II B) having an elephant with or without rider on the obverse and arched hill on the reverse, occur from III. 10 to III. 14. The four coins of type (II C) with a mythical animal, partly horse and partly bull, erroneously described as lanky bull, before a standard, on the obverse, and tree in railing, wheel, arched hill, Svastika and Ujjain symbol on the reverse, show more than one type of different denominations and occur from SP. III. 12 to SP. III. 16. Tiny coins (II D), eighteen in number, have probably tree in railing on the obverse and bull, horse or elephant on the reverse. They were discovered from SP. III. 12 to IV. 20. Out of the ten coins of the Mitra kings (Type III A), four are from III. 15, five from III. 16 and one from a post-structural pit. The four Magha coins (Type III B) belong to SP. IV. 20.

The square uninscribed cast coins, with their uniform distribution in all the structural periods from II. 5 to III. 10, antedate the first appearance of punch-
marked coins whose earliest occurrence is in *SP. III.* 10. From their frequent
association with silver punch-marked coins, it has been generally assumed that
these uninscribed cast coins are of the same date. But the evidence of these exca-
vations suggests that cast copper coins constituted the currency of the town as in
Vediśā and Ujjain, much before the introduction of silver money. The
absence of silver coins in the earlier levels may be accidental and further work
in the Gangetic Valley alone can establish the prior antiquity of cast copper
coins over punch-marked silver ones. The evidence furnished by these excavations
is significant and the priority in origin of punch-marked coins can now no
longer be taken for granted. There is no doubt, however, that these copper coins
remained in circulation along with silver and copper punch-marked coins.

Copper coins of many types and in various submultiples like Viṁśatikā,
Ardha and Pāda Viṁśatikā, Kārṣāpaṇa, Māsa, Kākini, Ardha Kākini are known
to Kautilya, Pāṇini, the Tripitaka, the Jātakas and the Śrauta Sūtras. The
combined literary evidence, thus, clearly attests the existence of copper coins
centuries before these works were compiled. The beginning of coinage can be
placed on the basis of the literary data, corroborated by the evidence furnished
by these excavations, in the early centuries of the first millennium B.C.

**Selected specimens are described below (Pls. 46 and 49):**

**Type I A—Silver**


Square, 17 mm. × 17 mm., wt. 40 grs.

*Obv:* Sun, Šādaracakra, dog above mountain, bull and taurine.

*Rev:* Plain.


Irregular rectangular, 12 mm. × 20 mm., wt. 49 grs.

*Obv:* Sun, Šādaracakra, bull, arched hill, serpent and trident.

*Rev:* Sun, tree, wheel with spokes, taurine and Indrayaṣṭi.

---

   Ibid, pp. 25 ff.
   Bhandarkar D. R., A.I.N., pp. 75 ff.

Fragment of an irregular rectangular coin, 11 mm. x 16 mm., wt. 36 grs.
Obv : Traces of hill, standard and taurine (of Saḍaracakra).
Rev : Blurred.


Round, diam. 12 mm., wt. 50 grs.
Obv : Sun, Saḍaracakra (?), arched hill, taurine and rabbit within crescent.
Rev : Taxila symbol.

_Type IB—Copper_


Oval, diam. 22 mm., wt. 25 grs.
Obv : Sun, Saḍaracakra, dog above arched hill, bull and elephant (?).
Rev : Leafy tree in railing, taurine, arched hill, pellet surrounded by dots.
Cf : Allan, C.C.A.I., Cl. 6, Gr. III., Var. ‘c’, (Silver) Pl. VII. 16; J.A.S.B. XXX (1934) Pl. XIV. 54.


Fragment—irregular shape, wt. 31 grs.
Obv : Sun, Saḍaracakra, crescent on hill (?) and caduceus.
Rev : Blurred.


Fragment of a rectangular coin, 13 mm. x 11 mm., wt. 43 grs.
Obv : Saḍaracakra, crescent on hill and other indistinct symbols.
Rev : Arched hill.

_Type II A—Square_


Square, 15 mm. x 15 mm., wt. 52 grs.
Obv : Elephant to left, taurine, Svastika and standard.
Rev : Tree in railing, hollow cross, crescent on hill and taurine.

II—Uninscribed cast coins—Copper


Square, 15 mm. x 15 mm., wt. 60 grs.
Obv : Elephant to left, taurine, Svastika and standard.
Rev : Tree in railing, hollow cross, crescent on hill and taurine.
Type II B—Circular

Circular, diam. 14 mm., wt. 20 grs.
Obv: Walking elephant.
Rev: Crescent on hill.
Cf: Allan, C.C.A.I., Uninscribed cast coins, Var. ‘q,’ Pl. XI. 25.

Circular, diam. 14 mm., wt. 30 grs.
Obv: Elephant.
Rev: Crescent on hill.

Circular, diam. 14 mm., wt. 22 grs.
Obv: Walking elephant with a rider.
Rev: Crescent on hill, lower two arches joined.

Type II C—Mythical animal (*Lanky bull?*)

Irregular, round, diam. 26 mm., wt. 96 grs.
Obv: Animal to left, standard, above indistinct object looking like standing figure.
Rev: Leafy tree in railing, wheel, arched hill, Svastika and Ujjain symbol.

Rectangular, 13 mm. x 9 mm., wt. 14 grs.
Obv: Animal to left before standard.
Rev: Tree in railing, four dots, Svastika and inverted taurine.

Square, 12 mm. x 12 mm., wt. 20 grs.
Obv: Animal to left before standard.
Rev: Hollow cross, tree in railing, Ujjain symbol.

Type II D—Tiny coins

Fragment of a rectangular coin, 10 mm. x 11 mm., wt. 17 grs.
Obv: Elephant to left facing standard, ladder (?) below.
Rev: Tree in railing, four circles.
Irregular rectangular, 9 mm. x 8 mm., wt. 17 grs.
Obv : Ujjain symbol (?).
Rev : Saddled horse to left

Circular, diam. 8 mm., wt. 10 grs.
Obv : Plain.
Rev : Bull to right, four circles conjoined.

Circular, diam. 12 mm., wt. 23 grs.
Obv : Indistinct symbol.
Rev : Bull to left.

Circular, diam. 8 mm., wt. 7 grs.
Obv : Four circles.
Rev : Blurred animal (?).

Circular, diam. 9 mm., wt. 10 grs.
Obv : Blurred.
Rev : Animal, probably horse (?).

III—Inscribed cast coins—Copper

Type III A—Mitra coins

Circular, diam. 17 mm., wt. 80 grs.
Obv : Indistinct symbols, “Ma” in incuse.
Rev : Blurred.

Irregular circular, diam. 14 mm., wt. 32 grs.
Obv : Blurred legend.
Rev : Blurred animal.

Circular, diam. 17 mm., wt. 65 grs.
Obv : Blurred.
Rev : Tree in railing, one indistinct symbol, legend Gho Ṣa Ṣa.
Cf : Cunningham, C.A.I., Pl. V. fig. 14.

Rectangular, 14 mm. x 12 mm., wt. 33 grs.

Obv: Horse to right before standard, legend above Sa ta ma ti.

Rev: Elephant to right before standard, taurine on right and Ujjain symbol above.

Cf: Cunningham, C.A.I., Pl. V. fig. 8.


Square, 13 mm. x 13 mm., wt. 29 grs.

Obv: Elephant to left before indistinct symbol, probably pillar, illegible legend Sa ta ma ta (?).

Rev: Tree in railing, Indrayast, Ujjain symbol.


Irregular rectangular, 15 mm. x 12 mm., wt. 23 grs.

Obv: Legend Ta Ma above ladder.

Rev: Blurred.

Type III B—Magha coins

28—(KSB XIII. A/7-58). IV. 20 or IV. 21.

Rectangular, 20 mm. x 16 mm., wt. 58 grs.

Obv: Legend within dotted border Si Va Ma

Rev: Completely blurred, probably bull to left.


Circular, diam. 14 mm., wt. 30 grs.

Obv: Tree in railing, legend Va Ma.

Rev: Standing bull.

SEALINGS

Three sealings with identical motifs and inscriptions were recovered during the excavations. Two of them belong to III. 16 and the third one comes from the destruction of III. 16. The motif appears to be a representation of some edifice divided by two walls into three compartments with an inscription below in the Śuṅga characters reading Sa Da Va Sa Ma. Of the two sealings illustrated here Pl. 49. no. 1 (B/2-59) is slightly earlier. The first, fourth and fifth letters in both the sealings, Sa Sa Ma are nearly identical. Letter Sa is similar to letter Sa in the inscription of Dhanabhūti from Bhārhatu.¹ The upper part of Ma is still semi-circular. Letters Da and Va in no. 2

¹. Bühler, Indische Palaeographie (Strassburg, 1896), Tafel II.
(B/2-60) have angular forms as in the case of the Bhārhat inscription. In B/2-59, however, Da still retains, to some extent, an earlier round-backed form and Va has a clear round base as against the markedly triangular base of letter Va in B/2-60. B/2-60, therefore, is of the same period as the Bhārhat inscription and B/2-59 is slightly earlier. On Paleographic grounds they are to be assigned to a period between c. 150-50 B.C.
CHAPTER EIGHT

THE ŚYENACITI OF THE PURUŚAMEDHA

I. THE ARCHAEOLOGICAL EVIDENCE OF THE ALTAR

Situation

The altar is situated near the eastern gate, at the foot of the defences on the outer side (Pl. 12), in an enclosure formed by the revetment of Rampart 3 and its return wall (Wall 15), now available in a very limited area, and is contemporary with them. The revetment and the return wall meet at a point which is in close alignment with the spine of the bird-shaped altar.

General Lay-out and Shape

The altar has been piled up in the shape of a flying bird with its face in the south-eastern direction (Pl. 28, Fig. 16). The head, body, wings and tail have been represented by the arrangement of bricks on a specially prepared site. The shoulders are slightly raised and the head and the tail are slightly tapering. The right wing is fairly long. It is curved in the natural way and is only half-spread. The left one has collapsed and is also partly washed out. On the head only one course of bricks at the bottom is available. The tail is feathered at the start and is of natural shape. Part of the body, part of the left wing, neck and the head and also the tail were destroyed by a later robbing, marked in the Section (Fig. 17) as Pit 7.

The Initial Stages of Construction

The initial stages in the building of the altar comprised the digging of a pit and the preparation of the site.

There is a clear evidence of digging a pit unequal in depth in different areas and the deepest in the centre and below the tail. The width of the pit in the centre at the deepest point is 6 ft. 10 ins. It was built in three stages as is indicated by
the lines of the pit on the Section and is almost cylindrical in shape. This is the picture on the Section running east-west. The same picture is revealed on the Section running north-south. Below the tail also, the pit is practically of the same depth.

_Evidence of the Earliest Rite Performed in connection with the Building of the Altar_

A bed, approximately 4 ins. to 6 ins. in thickness of gritty loose earth with gravel, was prepared on which a bone no. 229 of _Bos Indicus_ Linn (the Domestic humped cattle or Zebu of India) is placed on sherds at the bottom of the central pit towards its right (Pl. 31 A). It was covered with a thin layer of gravel.

_Piling of Vedikā No. 4 (Pls. 30 A and B)_

On the levelled surface to the right of this pit, another pit, square in plan, measuring approximately 5 ft. 3.5 ins. was dug to a depth of about 1 ft. The bricks of different shapes and sizes, into which they were cut before baking, were placed inside it. The largest brick measures 19.5 ins. × 11.5 ins. It is placed in a slanting way. The bricks are triangular, rectangular, five-sided and six-sided. There is a good number of clod-bricks also. The number of bricks is about 48 of which the larger bricks are about 17.

The bricks of the Vedikā were covered with fine sand about 3 ins. in thickness. From the shape, size, colour and placing of the bricks, it is clear that they were laid here for a special purpose, as such bricks could not have been used in an ordinary construction.

The outermost point of the right wing constructed afterwards at a raised level, is in the same plumb with the outer or western side of this Vedikā. To the east of the Vedikā and between it and the central pit described above, there is a circular pit lined with bricks. Three bowls marked nos. 1, 2 and 3 on the plan and filled evidently with sacrificial material, are placed on its circumference below the junction of the body and the tail, on the southern extremity of the tail and in the middle of the eastern side of the Vedikā no. 4. This pit has a radius of 4 ft. 5 ins. and is full of ash, charcoal and charred grains. Only a part of the pit could be exposed without dismantling the bricks piled to form the body, the right wing and the tail of the bird-shaped altar.

1. Information from Shri Bhoła Nath, Zoologist, Zoological Survey of India.
KAUSAmbI 1957-59

SECTION ACROSS SYENA-CITY ON A-B

SCALE OF FEET

SCALE OF METRES

FIG. 17
The centre of the circle mentioned above must have occupied a key position in the building of the altar. This may be understood from the observed facts of the plan that Bowl no. 2, the centre of the circle and the point just below the inner joint-spot of the right wing and the body of the bird and the western side of another sacrificial pit below the shoulder, all lie on a straight line. The radius of the circle and the length of this straight line from the centre to the inner joint-point of the wing bear the ratio of one to four. This very straight line, when extended towards the tail, passes through a point above which a human skull (no. 208, Pl. 33 B) in association with pots is placed on the tail. It is significant to notice that the innermost wing lies at a distance of 13 ft. 3 ins. from the centre of the circle. The head of the bird-shaped altar is 13 ft. 3 ins. from the centre of the body. From the centre of the circle, the point just below a cylindrical post-hole (1 ft. 6 ins. deep and 9 ins. wide at the top and 4 ins. at the bottom) and the central kankar nodule in the first layer lie at a distance of 11 ft. 6 ins. (west) and 10 ft. (south) respectively. An unlined pit below the right shoulder of the bird, full of ash and charcoal, in the same line as the centre of the Gārhapatty and the inner joint-point of the right wing and the body, has also been discovered.

The Mound within the Area of the Body (Pls. 29 and 30 A)

After this a mound was piled up in the middle of the area of the body by heaping gravel, sandy earth, gritty material with large stones and pebbles, clay and loose earth. The materials were used deliberately and the mixture was not haphazard. The maximum height of the mound (Uttaravedi) is about 8 ft. Some bricks were also laid in course of raising the mound. They are mostly cld-bricks but some of them are especially red also.

The Packing below the Tail and the Wings

The packing below the tail consists of sand, grit, gravel, loose earth and clay. The maximum depth of the packing on which the tail and the wings of the bird-shaped altar were built afterwards is 4 ft. 10 ins.

Levelling of the Pit

At a later stage the whole area was made level with the central mound by spreading soft and well-weeded clay. Its distinctive colour and composition enabled the excavators to demarcate very clearly the limits of the sacrificial area. The
bricks of the beak and tail are placed 4 ft. 10 ins. above the bottom of the pit. It is at this level that the first layer of clod-bricks is laid down in the central mound.

**Dimensions of the Altar**

After filling the pit and preparing the ground, the altar in the shape of a flying bird was constructed. The total length from beak to tail is 49 ft. 8 ins. and the width, approximately, 33 ft. 6 ins., the ratio being three to two. The length and width of the body are approximately 19 ft. 6 ins. and 13 ft. respectively. The width of the body at the shoulders is 14 ft. 3 ins. The span of the right wing, which alone is fully intact, measures 9 ft. 10 ins. The right wing has three divisions—the outer, middle and the inner, measuring 4 ft. 7.5 ins., 2 ft. and 3 ft. 9 ins. respectively. The divisions are clearly observed in the plan. The beak and neck measure 7 ft. 7 ins. and 22 ft. 6.5 ins. respectively.

**The Body**

The shape of the body is elliptical and is demarcated from the wings, head and tail by a layer of sand, 6 ins. in thickness, marked 12 C in the Section, which was spread over Layer 1 (12 D in the Section). The body consists of five layers of bricks and bones with specially prepared mud-mortar intervening between them. With the exception of a few bones placed all round the body and a human skull on the tail, the rest of the skeletal material is deposited in the different layers of the body marked 12 A, 12 B and 12 D in the Section.

**Formation of the Right Wing (Pl. 27 A)**

The wing, as already pointed out, has three divisions. The outer division joins the body at the shoulder, and at this junction bricks are placed vertically. In the outer wings, from the shoulders right up to the cross-spine, bricks of natural shape and size are laid down upon one another into courses almost similar to those of a regular structure. The top courses are slightly tilted and disjointed on account of subsequent robbing in the area. At the point where the cross-spine touches the inner side of the outer wing, there is a complex knob of bricks of which sixteen are intact, and sixteen courses of bricks are visible between this knob and the shoulder joint.

On the other side of the knob down the wing, there are fifteen courses of bricks up to a distance of 6 ft. 4 ins. At the end of the outer wing, the process
of building changes as there are no regular courses of bricks and the piling has been done with a view to represent its feathers.

The largest brick of the outer wing measures 18 ins. × 11 ins. and one of the smallest, 3.5 ins. × 3 ins. The bricks are mostly quadrangular and rectangular. At the junction of the outer wing and the shoulder, the bricks are so laid as to form a return wall which joined the bricks laid horizontally in the south-western end of the body, and this joint was supported by a cluster of bricks placed vertically.

The Middle part of the Wing—There are two bowls placed in inverted position, one approximately in the central part of the middle wing and the other towards its lower side. The bricks of this part, cut to different shapes before baking, are triangular, rectangular and pentagonal, mostly measuring 11 ins. × 7 ins. approximately.

The Inner part of the Wing—The bricks of the inner part are mostly small, measuring 10 ins. × 6 ins., 5 ins. × 2.75 ins., 4 ins. × 4.5 ins. etc. The three sides of one of the triangular bricks are 3 ins., 4 ins. and 4.5 ins. The inner part of the wing and the body are separated by a narrow gap throughout. There are 10 special bricks at the junction of the body and the inner wing on the cross-spine. Bowl no. 4 on the plan is placed in an inverted position at the junction of the body and the lower end of the inner part of the wing.

The Left Wing

The left wing has collapsed and sunk down and slightly moved from its original position. However, the remaining bricks suggest that it was the counterpart of the right wing.

It is significant to notice that there are no special marks on the bricks of the wings.

The Remaining Parts of the Altar

The narrow head and beak simulate the natural bird. Some bricks bear special marks (particularly marks like horse-shoe). This portion of the body furnishes the clearest evidence that the method adopted in construction deliberately avoided the normal building method of placing one course of bricks upon another. The bricks are piled on edge or in slanting position and the
effect of all this is that the altar looks like a pile of bricks rather than a building (Pl. 28). But it is clear that the piling of bricks is rigorously governed by special rules of ritual and the number of bricks on the two sides of the spinal line running north-south are piled in perfect symmetry so that for every brick on one side there is a corresponding one on the other.

The tail is long and the small triangular bricks at its end are arranged with their bases on the outer edge so as to give the appearance of a flying bird.

Human skull no. 208 (Pl. 33 B) in association with pots has been placed on the tail (Pl. 33 A). The pots, belonging to a type with a triangular externally thickened rim, short inconspicuous neck and pear-shaped body, were very common in the third-first century B.C. They were laid on the sides around the skull and one was placed in an inverted position. (Fig. 18, 2)

On the northern side of the tail is a large platform mentioned as Sadus in the plan, measuring 39 ft. 6.5 ins. x 8 ft. and connected with the end of the tail by a bone. The bricks of the Sadus also are especially red and marked with lines similar to those of the body.

Layer 1

Having raised the mound to a height of 8 ft. from the bottom, the rest of the area on which, later on, the wings were built, was made level with the central mound by heaping gravel, earth, sand and ash. Then on the central platform a course of bricks was laid, which was confined only to the body. The system of the piling of bricks to form the wings followed an entirely different pattern, as already described. In course of making this layer of bricks, specially prepared and weeded mud, distinctive in colour and composition, was used, which assumed a cement-like hardness, when dried. The first layer was covered with sand (Pl. 27 B) scaling the objects noted below:

1. The Kankar Nodule (Pls. 29 and 32 B)—A kankar nodule with small cavities, enclosed by a circle of 10 bricks, was placed just at the centre of the body, marked 12 D in the Section. In the course of the excavations, the plan of this bird-shaped altar was drawn with the help of plane table and the centre was noted first on paper and then the sand deposit on the first layer of the body was removed. This kankar nodule was discovered, exactly at the point which conformed to the centre of the plan of the body, prepared by the draftsmen.
(2) The Offering-Stand (Pl. 32 A Fig 18,1)—With its archetype in the proto-historic dish-on-stand and completely unknown to the pottery traditions of the Gangetic Valley in the historical period, the fire-pan is placed at a distance of 2 ft. 11 ins. from the centre towards the north and its nearest distance from the main spine is about one foot to the east. Evidently, the shape has been determined by rigid ritual formulas. The prominent features of this offering-stand are a short stem, a broad base and a dish at the top with a flat and thick rim, the maximum thickness being .75 ins. There is a marked carination at the junction of the dish and the stand, made prominent by a chord. Its total available height is approximately 5.25 ins. The dish is approximately 9 ins. or a pradeśa wide at the top with a depth of 1.75 ins. It is very sturdy, strong and thick in section, the minimum being 3/8 ins., made of clay containing gritty and organic material like wood, and well-fired with a red slip applied to the surface. It was placed on a platform of bricks on which there was a layer of sand and its base was covered with clod-bricks. Traces of some sacrificial substance are still visible at the bottom of the dish which was finally covered with sand.

(3) The Terracotta Female Figurine (Pl. 46, no. 14; Fig 18,3)—A mould-made female terracotta figurine has been found just near the offering-stand. The hair arranged in six visible braids, to the ends of which are attached objects like triśūla, ankuśa etc. is covered with a head-gear decorated with triple pearl-strings forming a semi-circle from ear to ear. She wears ear ornaments, a garland and armlets and the upraised right hand is holding the stem of a full-blown lotus. The type was popular in the Gangetic Valley in the 2nd-1st century B.C.

(4) Bricks—The most prominent brick no. 18 (Pl. 31 B) has been placed at a distance of 1 ft. 9 ins. from the central kankar nodule towards the front. It is trapezoid in shape, two sides of which measure 3 ins. and the other two 7.5 ins. and 4.5 ins. respectively with a thickness of about 2 ins. It was prepared from clay in which, besides other materials, bone pieces were also mixed. The burnt texture of a bone peeps out from one side of the brick. It is prominently red—deep-red on one side on account of the high percentage of iron dust in it. The most prominent feature of the brick is an engraving on it depicting a man tied to a post with the neck bent forward, the two legs flexed and the arm hanging downwards. The victim is tied with a rope which passes probably thrice round the shoulder, chest and part of the back with its loose ends shown below the shoulders. The instrument with which the neck is being severed is also shown. The brick is also marked with three lines.
(5) **Other Special Bricks**—The central kankar nodule (no. 1/5) was encircled by 10 special bricks (nos. 3/5 to 12/5) of deep-red colour. The lines on some of them are clear and they are three in number. These bricks with line-marks are arranged in a definite pattern forming a circle round the central nodule (Pl. 32 B). An animal bone (no. 12) has also been arranged near the cross-spine along with the bricks forming the circle.

There were thirty special bricks (24/5 to 30/5; 44/5 to 53/5; 54/5 to 63/5), arranged in rows of ten on each of the three diagonals of the body. The bricks of the north-eastern diagonal are washed out. The bricks are normally marked with curved lines, 'V' shapes and dots made by fingers. The bricks are of various shapes and sizes and some of them have two colours—red and deep-red. There are five special bricks in a row (34/5 to 38/5) on the frontal fringe and five (39/5 to 43/5) on the right fringe of the body, distinguished by their colour. The bricks of the two other fringes are washed out. A number of other bricks have also been placed in this layer.

(6) **Bones**—The total number of bones arranged in association with these bricks in this layer is 37. Bone no. 12, as already noted, has been placed in association with the bricks forming a circle round the centre. The most prominent bones are nos. 228 (a horse skull), 211 and 212 (fragments of a bone of an elephant—Pl. 34 A)*, 213 (tortoise—Pl. 29), 227 (lower jaw of a pig found on the fringe outside the sacrificial altar), 227 A (Indian humped cattle)* and 32 (domestic goat—Pl. 35 A)*. No. 33 is a human bone and nos. 210, 210 A, 210 B and 210 C have tentatively been identified as bones of bull, horse, ram and he-goat respectively. An iron model of a snake has also been recovered from this layer (Fig 18,4).

The entire Layer I was then sealed by a layer of fine sand, 6 ins. in thickness, seen clearly in the Section, marked 12 C (Fig. 17). It is to be noted that the sand was only deposited on the body and in plan closely followed its shape. There was no trace of it on the wings, head and tail.

**Layer II**

Layer II (12 B in the Section), having a maximum thickness of 7 ins. and a minimum of 5 ins., was immediately above the sand layer. The most pro-

---

*Information from Shri Bhola Nath.*
minent feature of this layer is the placing of bone no. 201 (Pl. 35 B). It is a jaw-bone identified as fragment of right ramus mandible with third molar tooth of *Bos Bubalis* (the Indian domestic buffalo)*. It was placed in the centre directly above the central kankar nodule of Layer I, set within a frame-work of bricks, with the spine passing through its bend.

This layer has yielded only a few other bones which are all of animals (nos. 202, 203, 204 and 205).

Twenty bricks, in fivesets of four each, are arranged round the central jaw (brick nos. 1/3, 2/3, 3/3, 4/3; 5/3, 6/3, 7/3, 8/3; 9/3, 10/3, 11/3, 12/3; 13/3, 14/3, 15/3, 16/3; 17/3, 18/3, 19/3, 20/3). The bricks are especially red and have a number of line-marks, 'V' shapes, curves, dots etc. Some of them are small bricks (4/3, 8/3, 10/3, 12/3, 16/3, 20/3 etc).

The other special bricks are, a row of 5 along the right fringe of the body (33/3, 36/3, 41/3, 42/3, 43/3), another of 4 along the frontal fringe (113/3, 114/3, 115/3, 116/3); and a third one of only 3 along the left fringe (90/3, 91/3, 94/3).

All these may be recognised from their especially red colour, and from a number of line-marks mentioned above. Besides these, there are a number of other bricks also on this layer. The bricks are of various shapes—triangular, rectangular, oblong, square etc.

*Layer III (12 A in the Section)*

*Bones*—The maximum thickness of Layer III is 9 ins. and the minimum 6 ins. This layer has yielded the largest number of bones from the area of the body (Pl. 36 A). There are three complete human skulls pieces (nos. 1, 106 and 117) and ten skull (nos. 82 A, 99, 99 A, 122, 125, 125 A, B and C, 126 and 191). The fragments were either of different skulls or, if they belonged to one only, they were placed deliberately in the different areas of the body. It appears that these skulls were carefully placed in brick-enclosures as is very clearly marked in the case of Skull no. 1.

*Skull No. 1 (Pl. 37 A)*—It is placed to the south of the central brick at a distance of 7 ft. 6 ins. and is surrounded by brick nos. 147/2 to 155/2. On the western side, brick no. 148/2 was placed with its corner quite close to the

* Information from Shri Bholu Nath.
side of the skull. Another brick no. 147/2 was placed on the north-western side with its corner almost touching the jaw and one of its sides approaching a corner of the previous brick. The other bricks were also arranged round the skull and all of them were sloping towards it. An animal bone was also placed on the southern side of the skull just near the vault. The space, between the skull, the bone and the bricks, was filled with mud, mortar and clod-brick. Finally, a course of bricks was laid covering the skull and the bone. This arrangement clearly reveals a definite and deliberate procedure.

Skull no. 106, lying at a distance of 1 ft. 9 ins. from the centre to the east, has also been placed in association with bricks.

Five human jaws were discovered in this layer from the area of the body, marked nos. 112, 137, 154, 161 and 182. Jaw nos. 112 (Pl. 38 A) and 137 are placed at a distance of 10 ft. 8 ins. from each other and the line connecting them passes through the centre of Skull no. 1. There is evidence that the jaws were carefully set amidst bricks.

Besides, the following bones are also tentatively identified as human bones: 2, 7, 8, 10, 12, 16, 56, 57, 58, 61, 61 A, 61 B, 61 C, 63, 64, 65, 66, 67, 68, 69, 70, 72, 73, 74, 75, 76, 77, 78, 81, 82, 84, 85, 86, 95, 100, 101, 102, 103, 104, 111, 111 A, 113, 114, 115, 116, 118, 119, 120, 123, 135, 143, 149, 150, 152, 153, 159, 163, 180 and 181. They are bones of rib, hip, hand and leg.

There are altogether 234 bones in this layer, some of them having clear incision marks. They have been deliberately set along with the bricks. Sometimes the bones have been so arranged as to form 'V' shapes—bone nos. 56, 61 and 82 form two 'V' shapes joined together (Pl. 36 B). The line-marks on the bricks often resemble the placing of these bones forming 'V' shapes. Some bones were also placed crosswise.

The special bricks in this layer were as follows:—

An especially red brick with a hole was placed at the centre (no. 1/2). At a distance of 1 ft. towards the head, there was another special brick with three 'V' shaped line-marks (no. 2/2). There was a row of red bricks on the frontal fringe of the body (nos. 97/2, 124/2, 125/2, 136/2, 137/2, 141/2, 143/2). A row of three bricks was found on the left fringe (99/2, 100/2 and 101/2), and another of six on the right fringe (103/2, 110/2, 113/2, 118/2, 120/2, and 125/2). All
these bricks, triangular, rectangular and of other shapes, are marked with triple 'V' shapes, curves, straight lines, dots etc. A number of other bricks including clod-bricks were also found in this layer.

Layers IV and V

Layers IV and V, destroyed by a subsequent pit and available only in a very small area near the shoulders with 7 ins. and 5 ins. respectively in thickness, have yielded 30 bones only.

Bone no. 3 has tentatively been identified as a human skull piece. Bone no. 24 is a lower human jaw (Pl.38 B). Nos. 4, 5, 9, 20, 38 may also be tentatively identified as human bones. Nos. 23 and 44 are animal bones.

It appears that when all the five layers were made the following bones were placed on the altar:

Nos. 3, 4, 5, 15, 21, 22, 23, 24, 32, 38, 39, 40, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 47, 48, 49, 50, 51, 53, 54 and 56. Some of them were found scattered on the right shoulder and also in the contiguous area of the right wing. It is not possible to determine whether the bones in the area of the right wing are in situ or were displaced from the body and thrown on the wing when the site was disturbed by a robbing. The latter seems to be more likely.

II. THE LITERARY DATA

The Agnicayana

The Agnicayana, a complex and elaborate rite involving the piling of the fire altar, is regarded as obligatory in case of the Mahāvratas and optional in other Soma sacrifices. The ritual texts prescribe various types of the fire altar of which the Suparnaciti or the Šyenaciti, piled in the form of a flying Šyena, is the most important. The flying Šyena symbolises the sacrificer's ascent to heaven, which is regarded as the chief object of this rite. A great symbolic and cosmogonic signification has been attached to it. It symbolises the reconstruction and restoration of Prajāpati who, having been sacrificed as the Puruṣa, furnished the material for the creation of the universe in all its parts. The

1. For a fuller discussion of the textual evidence on this chapter, see Part Two, chapters nine and ten.
A unique position occupied by this rite in the ritual scheme may very well be understood from the fact that the Ś.B., in the highest flight of thought, declares this rite to include all the important sacrifices like Agnihotra, Darśapūrṇamāsa, Rājasūya, Vājapeya, Aśvamedha etc.

One of the important preliminary ceremonies is the offering of five victims, a man, a horse, a bull, a ram and a he-goat. Their heads are to be built into the altar and the bodies are thrown into water from which the material for building the fire-pan and the bricks of the altar is derived. The clay is solemnly collected with the aid of a horse and an ass, according to the Taittiriya School, and a horse, an ass and a he-goat, according to the Śukla Yajurveda School. Out of this clay, the fire-pan, the Āṣādhā brick and the three Viśvajyotis bricks are prepared first, and then the other bricks.

After the fumigation and other smārakaṇas of the Ukha, the first initiation ceremony takes place, of which an important element is the offering of an animal cake to Vaiśvānara on twelve pot-sherds. The fire-pan is kept filled with fire from the time of the consecration and is carried about for a year by the sacrificer who performs various other rites, like the striding of Viṣṇu-steps during this period. Then the original Gārhapataya hearth is built with bricks and the ground for the fire altar is prepared by ploughing with the aid of oxen yoked to a plough, made of Udumbara wood, by watering and sowing various kinds of herbs and seeds. Sand is then spread on the Gārhapataya hearth. The mound of the Uttaraavedi, with clod-bricks within it, is piled in the middle of the body and is covered with sand. Then the whole body is brought in a level by filling sand which is, however, not spread in the areas of the wings and the tail.

The fire altar is piled in five layers on the Uttaraavedi. The first layer contains a lotus-leaf in the centre of the body of the altar, with a gold plate upon it and a gold man on the latter. Then two laddies are placed—one of Kārṣamaryā in the south and the other of Udumbara in the north. The Svayamātṛṛtā (a kankar nodule or a naturally perforated brick) is placed close to the gold man and then fresh green dūrvā grass is placed upon it. After placing a number of special bricks, the most important brick, Āṣādhā, is placed and then a live tortoise, mortar and pestle, the Ukha and the victim’s heads respectively. Besides, the Taittiriya School prescribes the head of a snake. In addition to the special bricks, the texts also provide for other bricks in the first layer. Then the body of the altar alone is covered with sand. The same procedure of placing bricks and ultimately covering them with purīṣa is followed in respect of each of the
remaining layers also. One naturally perforated brick or kankar nodule is placed at the centre of the body in each of the first, third and fifth layers. A most noteworthy feature is that the parts of human and animal body and bones are often identified with bricks; these bones were placed in stead of and also along with the bricks.

After the fire altar has been constructed, 425 libations made of all sorts of wild plants, are offered to Rudra and his associates. The formal placing of the fire on the altar is carried out with great ceremony. The priest and the sacrificer step on the altar. Then follow a number of libations including 372 libations for Agni. There is also the rite called the yoking of the fire. Offerings are made to minor deities like Anumati, Kuhū, Rākā, Sinivāli etc. At the end of the final libations there is an offering for Mitra and Varuṇa.

*The Agnicayana as an Evolving Institution*

The rite of the piling of the fire altar presents itself to us as an evolving institution. Fuller details regarding this rite are found in the texts belonging to the Yajurveda. The details suggested in the Samhitās increase considerably in the Brāhmaṇas and they acquire enormous complexities both of the nature of addition and variation in the Sūtras. This can very well be illustrated by examining the practice of the sacrifice of the five victims for obtaining the heads intended to be buried in the first layer of the altar and by carefully analysing the number and names of bricks to be used in different layers.

As regards the sacrifice of the five victims, there is reference only to dvipada and catuspada in the Samhitās of the Kṛṣṇa and Śukla Yajurveda. In the Brāhmaṇas of these two Schools the complete theory of the five sacrificial victims has been formulated. In the Sūtras the further evolution and growth of this rite may be traced along four lines: first, the increase of details associated with this rite; secondly, the specification of the human victim whose head may be obtained for this purpose; thirdly, the tendency of substitution and option manifest in the Sūtras and fourthly, the complete omission of the practice of obtaining the head of a dead man for twenty-one beans as envisaged by the K. S. B. (XX. 8). Thus, it is clear that the evolutionary process here involves not only addition and elaboration but also omission. Now it is worthwhile to notice the nature of the elements showing evolution and growth with regard to this practice of the sacrifice of the five victims in the Sūtras. The first point is in respect of the increase of ritual details. An example of this is found in the Kāṭ. Śr. While
the Ś. B. is silent about the way in which the human victim should be sacrificed for obtaining the head, the Kāṭ. Śr. lays down that he should be slaughtered in an enclosure. The second point relates to the specification of the human victim. In the Brāhmaṇas there is no mention of his caste, but the Baud. Śr. lays down that the head in question should be of a Vaiśya. The other Sūtras, e.g. Kāṭ. Śr., Āp. Śr., Sat. Śr. and Vaik. Śr., prescribe that it should be of a Vaiśya or a Rājanya. The third point is with regard to the option and substitutes for the heads of the victims. The Brāhmaṇas did not favour the practice of substitutes for the victims. But in the Sūtras of Kṛṣṇa and Śukla Yajurveda there is reference to substitutes also. The question of substitution shall be discussed later on. Here only this much is necessary to keep in view that the scope of substitution is very limited in the Sūtras of the Kṛṣṇa Yajurveda. On the other hand, it appears in a considerably extended form in the Kāṭ. Śr. where gold and clay models have also been prescribed. However, the general practice was of actually sacrificing the five victims for obtaining the heads. This is clearly noticed even in the Kāṭ. Śr. where we find liberal provision for option and substitution. There is clear reference in this text to the sacrificial slaughter of man in an enclosure. This means that, side by side with the older practice of actual sacrifice of the five victims, the tendency of offering substitutes had also come into existence in the period of the Sūtras and was favoured by certain Śākhās.

Inspite of the fact that the general assumption, on the basis of which rules have been formulated, is of five victims, there is also an indication of a he-goat as a substitute for the heads of the five victims in the T. S. B., Āp. Śr., the texts of the Śukla Yajurveda, and the Śāṅk. Śr. belonging to the R. V. The option is clear in the texts belonging to the Śukla Yajurveda and the Śāṅk. Śr. But the common use of the term pasuśūrani (in the plural number) in the T. S. B. indicates that the option was clearly not favoured by this text. But Āp. Śr. of the same school allows all the mantras to be used for one victim intended for Vāyu and thus, it clearly recognises the option. In the Vait. Śr. of the A. V. which is a later Sūtra-work, we find the specific reference of laying down the head of only one victim, i.e. aja in the first layer of the altar. Here we notice the tendency of modification and simplification in course of the evolution of this rite. Originally, the number of victims offered for obtaining the heads was five, but later on there arose the practice of making a he-goat, offered to Vāyu, as a substitute for all the five animals. This is more marked in the Śukla Yajurveda School and in the Śāṅk. Śr. of the R. V. But even then the practice of the offering of five victims, and not one, continued to be in vogue.
At this stage it is significant to note that, in the first place, the limited reformist tendency of substitution favouring the obviation of the necessity of slaughter of the five victims and, in the second, the sacrifice of only one victim, instead of five, emerged due to the impact of certain socio-religious factors tending to bring about a change in the perspective of values and culminating in the idea of sanctity of and reverence for life, which shall be discussed afterwards.

Thus far, the evolution of the rite of Agnicayana along the practice of sacrifice of the five victims has been noticed. Now the second main aspect of this rite which relates to the names and number of bricks is to be considered. The study of bricks has also thrown valuable light on the gradual evolution and growing complexity of this rite. This is very clearly noticed in the texts of the Kṛṣṇa Yajurveda School. The mantras of the T. S. in the context of the first layer can be associated only with 7 bricks. But in the Brāhmaṇa portions of the T. S., K. S. and M. S. references to 7, 9 and 11 brick-names respectively are found. The names increase, on the whole, in the Śrauta Sūtras of Baudhāyana, Āpastamba and Vaikhānasā where 16, 14 and 13 brick-names occur respectively. New names like Virāja, Sayuja, Hiranyesṭakā, Sanīyāni, and Māndalesṭakā are coined by Baudhāyana and Čarmesṭakā by Āpastamba and Vaikhānasā, besides a number of bricks mentioned in the Śaṁhitā Brāhmaṇas belonging to the Kṛṣṇa Yajurveda. Baudhāyana prescribes two additional types of bricks, viz. Sayuja and Sanīyāni for the second layer. A similar tendency is noticeable in respect of the third layer also. Āpastamba and Vaikhānasā prescribe for this layer a type of brick known as Bhūtestakā which is conspicuous by its absence in the earlier texts of this school. Vaikhānasā further goes to the extent of prescribing a novel brick known as Vaikhaṇaṇa, which is evidently after the name of the School. In the fourth layer, besides other variations, Baudhāyana introduces Sayuja and Sanīyāni bricks. Āpastamba and Vaikhānasā accept the latter but at the same time increase the number from one to two. In case of the fifth layer, new bricks like Raṣṭreḥrrt and Aiyāni are introduced by Baudhāyana and Jimūtā and Upāśvarī by Āpastamba. Although some uniformity in respect of names and number of bricks is shown by the Śukla Yajurveda School, yet certain variations are also noticed. For instance, Kātyāyana reduces the number of Chandaśyā bricks from 30, as found in the Ś.B., to 6.

On the whole, it is quite clear that these additions and variations in the scheme of bricks throw ample light on the evolution of this rite. But the process of evolution involves the disappearance of some elements. For example, the bricks called Vṛṣṭisani and Jyotismati, which are indicated in the Śaṁhitās and Brāhmaṇas of the Kṛṣṇa Yajurveda for the second and third layers respectively,
continue as such upto the Baud. Sr. but disappear afterwards. Similarly, the
brick, called Spt, is indicated in the Samhitas and Brähmana of the Krśna and
Śukla Yajurveda for the fourth layer but disappears in the Śutras afterwards.

The Social factors

In tracing the general course of the evolution of this rite, mention may be
made of the social factors which tended to determine certain practices. Attention
has already been drawn to the growing idea of the sanctity of and reverence
for life. The other force was of the caste system. In the Śutras there is the
specification of a man of Rājanya or Vaiśya caste as a victim for obtaining the
head. This shows that, due to the growing conception of the order of dignity of the
four castes, the Brähmana was considered to be too noble and the Śūdra as
too ignoble to be sacrificed for this purpose. Naturally, the scope of choice was
limited to Rājanya and Vaiśya only. Further, in connection with bringing the
clay, the horse, the ass and the he-goat, required for the purpose, are equated with
Kṣatra (nobility), Vaiśya-Śūdra, and Brähmana respectively. The arrangement
of these animals in coming and going is determined by the status of the caste which
each symbolises. “Inasmuch as, in going from here, the horse goes first, therefore
the Kṣatriya, going first, is followed by the three other castes; and inasmuch
as, in returning from there, the he-goat goes first, therefore the Brähmana, going
first, is followed by the three other castes. And inasmuch as the ass does not
go first, either in going from here or in coming back from there, therefore the
Brähmana and Kṣatriya never go behind the Vaiśya and Śūdra: hence they
walk thus in order to avoid a confusion between the good and bad. And more-
over, he thus encloses these two castes (Vaiśya and Śūdra) on both sides by the
priesthood and the nobility, and makes them submissive”.

Thus far, a synoptic view of the evolution of this rite has been taken.
But the complex process of evolution also shows that though the basic elements
of this rite, ever and every where, were the same, schoolwise differences and
variations in practice have also arisen.

The Fundamental Common Elements

Mention has already been made of the fundamental common elements
of this rite which appear in all the schools. Briefly speaking, they are the

obtaining of the five heads, the dikṣā ceremony, the preparation of the ground for the fire altar, the preparation and laying down of the Ukhā, the Asādha, other common bricks and the Svayamātṛṇā, the building of the Gārhapatiya hearth, the Āhavāniya, and the piling of the altar in five successive layers.

Differences and Variations in the Practices of the Two Major Schools

In spite of the fact that the basic features relating to this rite are common to both the major Schools of the Yajurveda, differences between them are also noteworthy. There are certain special features which are exclusive to either of the two major Schools. Thus, in the texts belonging to the Kṛṣṇa Yajurveda the rite of the sacrifice of the five victims occurs along with the recitation of the Sāmīdhēṇi verses after the preparation of the Ukhā, but this appears as the very first rite in the texts of the Sukla Yajurveda School.

In respect of the rite connected with the offering of the five victims also, there are notable differences between the two major Schools. In the texts belonging to the Kṛṣṇa Yajurveda School, the scope of option and substitutes is considerably limited. The substitutes for the heads of man and horse, actually slaughtered in connection with this rite, can be the heads of those two killed in battle or by an arrow-shot or thunderbolt; substitutes for other heads have not been contemplated. But the Kāt. Śr., belonging to the other school, goes to the extent of prescribing gold and clay models as substitutes for the actual heads of all the victims. Thus a liberal tendency is noticeable in the Sukla School. But it is to be borne in mind that the older practice of the actual sacrifice of the victims was also continuing side by side. Further, the practice of placing either the human head or all the heads on the Valmikavapā for the purpose of the restoration of life and treating the human head with beans in order to make it medhyā or fit for sacrifice, are practices exclusively confined to the texts belonging to the Kṛṣṇa Yajurveda.

The evidence of the Kṛṣṇa Yajurveda School shows that at the time of placing the head in the first layer of the altar seven gold chips were thrust into the organs of breath of the human head. But the Ś.B. and the Kāt. Śr., belonging to the Sukla Yajurveda School, lay down that seven gold chips should be thrust into the organs of breath of each head; if the victim is one only, seven gold chips.

1. The idea of making the heads medhyā renders untenable the view of Keith that this rite was a building-rite.
chips should be used and not thirty-five. In the texts belonging to the Krṣṇa Yajurveda, there is a provision for laying down the head of a snake also in the first layer, a practice which finds no mention in the texts of the Śukla Yajurveda School. Similarly, the Śaviṭr offering which is performed, just after the sacrifice of the five victims according to the texts belonging to the Krṣṇa Yajurveda, occurs in the texts of the Śukla Yajurveda School after the preparation of the animals for bringing the clay. Only two animals—a horse and an ass—are required for the collection of the clay in the texts of the Krṣṇa Yajurveda, whereas in the texts of the other school there are three animals for this purpose—a horse, an ass and a he-goat. Further, according to the texts of the former school, the clay should be brought only on the back of the ass. But the texts of the latter school prescribe that all the animals should be employed for this purpose. Among a number of things to be mixed with the clay of which the Ukhā is made, Krṣṇājinaloma is prescribed only by the texts of the Krṣṇa Yajurveda, whereas iron dust is exclusively confined to the other school. The Ukhā with nine corners for the purpose of abhicāra is mentioned only in the texts belonging to the Krṣṇa School. The texts of this school prescribe that the Aṣāḍhā should be prepared by the Yajamāna, whereas, those of the Śukla School lay down that the wife of the sacrificer should prepare it. The texts of the former provide that the Gārhapatya hearth should be piled up in layers in accordance as the sacrificer piles up the fire altar for the first, second or third time, whereas, the texts of the latter favour the practice of building it only in one layer. Kātyāyana, however, provides for an option that it may be built in three layers also.

The Apānabhṛt brick to be used in the first layer of the body is confined to the Krṣṇa Yajurveda texts only. Among the bricks of the second layer, the brick named Vṛṣṭisani is confined to the Krṣṇa Yajurveda School and the Vaiśvadevi to the other school. Among the bricks of the third layer, Jyotismatis and Bṛhatiś are mentioned only in the texts of the Krṣṇa Yajurveda School, whereas the name Chandasīyā occurs for the same bricks in the other school. Among the bricks of the fourth layer, the Vyūṣṭis are exclusive to the Krṣṇa Yajurveda School. In the fifth layer also a number of bricks like Sayuja, Kṛttikā and Vṛṣṭisani are confined to this school only.

Mutual Influences of the Two Schools

The two major Schools of the Yajurveda were flourishing side by side in the same country and, therefore, it was natural for them to be influenced by the practices of each other. This is noticeable in many cases. The spade for digging
The clay is to be made of bamboo, according to the Brāhmaṇas of both the schools—T. S. B. & Ś. B. But the Śrauta Śūtras of Baudhāyana and Kātyāyana provide for the option of gold spade also. Thus, either one was influenced by the other or both were affected by a common tendency. Similarly, in the Ś.B., belonging to the Śukla School, there was the provision for a preparatory dikṣa consisting of an animal cake to Vaiśvānara on twelve pot-sherds and the real dikṣa performed with a triple offering consisting of a cake to Agnivesu on eleven sherds, one to Vaiśvānara on twelve pot-sherds and a pap for the Adityas. Baudhāyana, the earlier Śūtrakāra of the Krṣṇa Yajurveda School, refers only to the other dikṣa and not to the preparatory one. But later on, Āpastamba, who shows strong influence of the Vājasaneyins, provides for the Paśupurodāsa for Vaiśvānara also, besides the triple offering. Further, Āpastamba borrows the practice of sweeping the Gārhapatya ground with palāsa branch from the Vājasaneyins from whom Āpastamba and Vaikhānasa also borrow the practice of watering the ground after ploughing it.

Besides, there are a number of instances to show that brick-names were also borrowed mutually. Thus, in the third layer, Viśvajyotis and Rātvās occur in the V.S., Ś.B. and Kāt. Sr. Though they do not figure in the Saṁhitās and Brāhmaṇas of the Krṣṇa Yajurveda, yet the Śūtrakāras of this School—Baudhāyana, Āpastamba and Vaikhānasa—prescribe them evidently under the influence of the former school. In the context of the fourth layer the two Rātvās occur throughout the Saṁhitā, Brāhmaṇa and Sūtra of the Śukla Yajurveda. The Sūtras of the other school have evidently borrowed them from this school, as they are unknown to the Saṁhitās and Brāhmaṇas of the former. In the Śukla School there is simplicity of details, a greater uniformity in the Saṁhitā, Brāhmaṇa and the Sūtra and less amenability to external influences. On the other hand, the tendency of complexity and elaboration is prominently marked in the Sūtras of the Krṣṇa Yajurveda; Āpastamba and Vaikhānasa show considerable influence of the Śukla School also.

Antiquity and Origin of the Rite

The differentiation in the forms of Agniciti had started as early as the period of the T. S. The Brāhmaṇa portion of this text prescribes as many as ten different types\(^1\) of the fire altar for various purposes. This clearly proves that the rite in its developed form antedates the T.S. This is further borne out

---

1. See below.
from the fact that even in the T.S., K.S. and M.S. many of the rites, originally connected with the sacrifice, are declared as utsama or obsolescent. Many of its accessories, according to Sāyaṇa, were falling into abeyance due to the complexity of the rite and also due to pramāda or negligence and carelessness on the part of the performers of the rite. This further shows that even prior to the period of these Samhitās the rite had acquired enormous complexities. Differentiation in practice had already started in various Samhitās of the Yajurveda. In fact, the expression of this rite is present in the Puruṣasūkta of the R.V. also. As it has been shown later on, all the essential elements, viz. identification of Puruṣa with Prajāpati, his identification with sky and metres, are implicit in this hymn. The Śank. Śr., belonging to this school, gives the details of this rite, which the Vait. Śr. of the A.V. also incorporates. The Samhitās, Brāhmaṇas and Sūtras of the Yajurveda deal with this rite in great details and with considerable variations. So from the point of view of its great antiquity, the wide acceptance and recognition of this rite by the three Vedic Samhitās, e.g. R.V., Y.V. and A.V., and the later literature belonging to them also becomes significant; and this clearly suggests the origin of the rite before the redaction of the Samhitās into different schools.

The rite of Agnicayana reflects a multiple origin. There is clear evidence to show that in the very beginning it was an independent rite unconnected with the Soma sacrifices and evolved somewhere in the North-Western India. Then at a certain stage it was interlinked with the tradition of the Soma sacrifice. The basic ideas behind this rite are the symbolic idea of the sacrifice of the Primeval Puruṣa by gods and his restoration as expressed in the Puruṣasūkta of the R.V., the primitive ideas of abhicāra as a magical means to avert foes, of defence and the appeasement of the wrath of a dreadful deity by the offering of gifts. The very name of this rite, Agnicayana, suggests that the
tendency of the Indo-European fire cult which was well-developed in Iran may also have something to do with the composition of this rite.

**Ideas and Tendencies responsible for the Emergence of this Rite**

In the Ś.B., the main authority for the Agnicayana is Śāndilaya, whereas, the rest of the sacrificial ritual has been attributed to Yājñavalkya. The other teachers, mentioned in connection with the rite, are Turā Kāvaśeya who performed it on the Kāroī, and Nagnajit Gāndhāra. All these names clearly point to the early connection of this rite with the North-West.

There are a number of references in the ritual texts which throw light on the juxtaposition of this rite with that of the Somayāga. In the Ś.B., it is mentioned that the interlinking of the Adhvara-Karma and the Agni-Karma is brought about by the ceremony of purchasing the Soma. Further, we come across the ceremony called Agni-Yogana or yoking of the fire altar and the Soma sacrifice. In connection with the dikṣā ceremony, Kātyāyana states that there is no contradiction (virodha) involved in these two rites. This also throws light on the interlinking and reconciliation of the two rites—the rite of Agni-Karma and that of the Soma.

The entire symbolic and mystic significance of the Agnicayana is contained in a nutshell in the Puruṣasūkta of the R.V. In this hymn there is the conception that Puruṣa Prajāpati was sacrificed by gods and thus furnished the material for the creation of the universe. He has been identified with metres, sky etc. It was from him that the five animals, man, horse, bull, he-goat and ram, were born at one stage. The fire altar also symbolically represents the reconstruction of the body of Prajāpati and the heads of these very victims are buried in the first layer of the altar. The human head, according to Āp. Śr. and Vaik. Śr., was placed on the Ukhā with the mantra “Sahasraśīrṣā puruṣah” etc. which has been taken from the Puruṣasūkta.

---

2. Ś. B. X. 6. 5. 9; cf. Keith, op. cit., p. 354.
4. Ibid., loc. cit.; Ś. B. X. 6. 5. 9.
5. Ś. B. VII. 31. 2-4.
6. Ś. B. IX. 4. 4. 1 ff.
7. Kāt. Śr. XVI. 176.
Now the next idea involved in the texture and composition of this rite, i.e. the idea of abhicāra or a malevolent rite to injure and repel enemies, is a primitive idea. It may be traced through the A.V. In the T.S. it is clearly laid down that the two types of Agniciti, i.e. Praugaciti and Rathacakraciti are meant for the purposes of abhicāra. This shows that the idea must have been a marked one in the earlier texture of the rite, when it had existed in an undifferentiated form. This idea naturally, therefore, occurs off-and-on in the procedure of the Śyenaciti also which, on the whole, was not at all an abhicāra rite. The preparation of the nine-cornered Ukhā, the leading of the ass before the horse while bringing the clay, the use of Titvaka wood for the Samidhā, some ideas connected with the placing of the Ayādhā brick, all these were meant for the purpose of abhicāra. It is also significant that these ideas occur only in the texts of the Krṣṇa Yajurveda which shows that this original idea was more faithfully preserved in this school. This tendency of abhicāra was responsible for the emergence of another malevolent rite, in course of time, known as the Śyenayāga, which was an Ekāha and the procedure of which was totally different from that of the Śyenaciti of the Agnicayana. The name Śyena appears here also but it is the abhicārika Śyena, apparently derived from the religious vocabulary of the A.V. It is not that Śyena which is represented with its flight to heaven in other texts and also in connection with the Śyenaciti.

The other idea, associated with the formation of this rite, was that of appeasing the wrath of a dreadful deity by means of gifts. This is clearly seen in the Śatarudriya in which 425 oblations are offered to the dreadful Rudra and his associates in order to appease his wrath so that he may not injure people with his bow and arrow. At the same time offerings were made to Mitra and Varuna to win their favour.

The complex nature of this sacrifice in the period of the Samhitās themselves and also in the obsolescence of some of its accessories; its wide acceptance and modifications in the different Samhitās and their later schools; the multiple origin showing commingling and reconciliation of diverse ideas and practices, benevolent and malevolent, in the Brāhmaṇas—all these point to its hoary antiquity antedating the redaction of the Samhitās into different schools.

1. See below.
2. See below.
3. See below.
4. See below.
The Śyenaciti of the Puruṣamedha

The Tradition of the Agnicayana

The evidence of Pāṇini leads one to conclude that the rite of the Agnicayana was in frequent practice in the 5th century B.C. Brick-names like Aśvini and Vayasya occur in the Aṣṭādhyāyī and a sūtra suggests that some other bricks were also known to Pāṇini.

While giving the picture of the social, religious and political disintegration and chaos of the Kali Age, the Yugapurāṇa section of the Gārgi Saṁhitā refers to the unrightful adoption of the practice of the performance of Agnikārya even by the Śūdras in that age. The text has been assigned to the first century B.C. by K.P. Jayaswal and this view has not been so far questioned. The Agnikārya which has been mentioned here as the representative element of Hinduism is evidently the same as Agnikarma or the Agnicayana which symbolised the entire Vedic sacrificial ritual.

The Puruṣamedha

The Puruṣamedha figures in the ritual texts belonging to the R. V., Y.V. and A.V. It had thus a widespread recognition and acceptance. The statement of Keith, that no trace of this rite is found in the Baud. Śr., is due to an oversight, as clear reference to Puruṣamedha does occur in this text. This rite is a variety of Soma sacrifice and is so-called because it involves the slaughter of men as sacrificial victims. It is a five-day sacrifice and the fundamental basis of its procedure is the same as that of the Aśvamedha. It should be performed by a Kṣatriya or a Brāhmaṇa. The object of its performance is to excell all others and to assert independent political supremacy.

Śāṅkhāyana and Vaitāna give details of the preliminary rites which include the purchase of the human victim—a Brāhmaṇa or a Kṣatriya for a thousand cows and a hundred horses. There are 11 Yūpas according to the texts

1. Aṣṭādhyāyī IV. 4. 126.
3. Ibid IV. 4.125
4. अन्निकाय ज्ञाने न अक्षे च वृद्धता: न
   सूत्र: कलिवृद्धस्यािते मनविषयति न संयमः। J.B.O.R.S., 1928, p. 403.
5. See below.
belonging to the Yajurveda and 25 according to Śāṅkhāyana who belongs to the R.V.

The first important rite in the text belonging to the Yajurveda is the sacrifice of 11 victims sacred to Agni and Soma. According to Śāṅkhāyana, the number should be 25. The most important rite known as the Atirātra is performed on the third day. On this day, 184 victims, according to the texts of the Śukla Yajurveda, are tied to the eleven posts. In the T.B. of the Kṛṣṇa Yajurveda, however, the number is 179. A Brāhmaṇa priest praises the men bound to the stakes by means of the Puruṣa-Nārāyaṇa litany. Then fire is carried round some of the victims including the Brāhmaṇas and others tied to the Agniṣṭha Yāpa. The paryagnikṛt victims are taken to the northern direction and are released. The remaining eleven or, according to some texts, twenty-two victims round whom the fire is not carried and who are thus non-paryagnikṛt, are not taken to the northern direction; they are slaughtered. The term “Samśhāpayati” used in this context clearly indicates sacrificial slaughter.

The last round of the sacrifice, according to the texts belonging to the Yajurveda, consists of the immolation of eleven barren cows sacred to Mitra-Varuna, Viśve-devas and Brhaspati.

Śāṅkhāyana and Vaitāna lay down additional and vivid details regarding this sacrifice. According to the former, a man, a gomṛga and a hornless he-goat are sacrificed for Prajāpati. Then twenty-five victims are brought to each of the twenty-five sacrificial posts and sacrificed for the seasonal deities. Afterwards, the Āṣṭi verses, ‘Agnirmṛtyu etc.’, are recited on the well-adorned human victim. The Udgātra sings sāman addressed to Yama and the Hotṛ recites the Puruṣa-Nārāyaṇa litany. The victim is sacrificed and the healing ceremony is performed for the sacrificer. The first consort of the sacrificer lies down near the slaughtered victim. Both of them are covered with an upper garment. Some other rites are also performed in this connection. Lastly, there is a sacrifice of ten victims fettered to a forked stake and of another twelve for the season.

According to Vaitāna also, the human victim is taken to the slaughtering place in the shed of Śāmitra with great ceremony and is made to lie down. When he is slaughtered, the Puruṣa-Nārāyaṇa litany is recited and the healing ceremony is performed.

The dakṣīṇā of this sacrifice comprises the land, property and the subjects
excluding those of the Brāhmaṇas. A special course of life has been prescribed for one who has performed this sacrifice.

The united testimony of all the schools of R.V., Y.V. and A.V. shows that the Puruṣamedha was a real rite and it involved the actual slaughter of human victims. They were slaughtered in the Agni-Somīya ceremony. Then on the Atirātra day 11 or 22 human victims who were non-Paryagnikṛt were slaughtered. Śāṅkhāyana and Vaitāna further throw a flood of light on the procedure of slaughtering the human victims.

The Evolution of the Puruṣamedha

The rite in the beginning appears to have been comparatively simple. In the V.S. there is simply the enumeration of 184 human victims of different kinds appropriate for particular gods and goddesses. The Taittirīya Brāhmaṇa reproduces a similar list of 179 victims and deities. In the V.S. the verb is missing but in the T.B. we find the verb Ālabhate in many places which according to all commentators indicates slaughter. In the light of the T.B. the list given in the V.S. also implies sacrificial slaughter.

The main point to be considered in this connection is that in these two texts there is the enumeration of only those victims which in later texts are declared as the victims of the Atirātra, the central and the main rite of the Puruṣamedha. This leads to the conclusion that in the initial stages this sacrifice comprised only the rite of the sacrifice of 184 or 179 victims. Its various other accessories like the immolation of 11 or 25 victims, sacred to Agni and Soma, in the beginning and the sacrifice of 11 barren cows at the end which appear in the Ś.B. and the Śūtras of the Śukla and Kṛṣṇa Yajurveda, must have developed at a later stage when the sacrifice was tending to become more and more complex and elaborate.

Besides this, the tendency of growing complexity in the matter of sacrifice of human victims of the Atirātra is also found. In the V.S. and in the T.B. there is no indication of the partial release and partial sacrifice of human victims. The weight of evidence tends to suggest that all the victims were slaughtered. But, later on, there developed the tendency of the partial release and partial slaughter of human victims. The Ś.B. and the Śrāuta Śūtras of the Yajurveda reveal that the Brāhmaṇas and other victims round whom the fire was carried were released and those for whom this particular ceremony was not performed were slaughtered.
The upshot of the whole discussion is that in the beginning the rite was comparatively simple and without any provision of the release of victims, but as time went on it tended to grow more and more complex and elaborate in ritual details and also in the provision for release of some victims. The practice of the release of Brāhmaṇas and others shows the operation of liberal tendencies and the influence of caste as already noticed in connection with the Agnicayana.

Schoolwise Differences

In the texts belonging to the Śukla and Kṛṣṇa Yajurveda, we find more or less the same procedure in respect of this rite. The main difference lies between the texts of these two schools on the one hand and the Śrāuta Śūtras of the R.V. and A.V.—Śāṅkhāyana and Vaitāna—on the other. According to the former texts, the central ceremony involves the sacrifice of a number of human victims, whereas in the latter the main rite relates to the sacrificial slaughter of only one with an elaborate ceremony.

There are other minor variations also. For instance, the Yūpas should be 11 according to the texts belonging to the Yajurveda and 25 according to Śāṅkhāyana. The Vaitāna Śr., however, makes the specific mention of only one Yūpa.

Antiquity and Origin of the Puruṣamedha

The antiquity of the Puruṣamedha or the ritual form of human sacrifice, as found in the ritual texts, may safely be traced back to the period of the V.S. where the enumeration of 184 sacrificial human victims is found. Hillebrandt\(^1\) goes to the extent of seeing even in the R.V. (X.18.7) the indication of this rite as preserved in the Śāṅk. Śr. where the chief queen lies with the dead body of the human victim. Though this view has not met with general approval, the wide acceptance of this rite by the texts of various schools strengthens the case of its antiquity. The view of Keith\(^2\) that it was a much later 'priestly invention to fill up the gap in the sacrificial system which provided no place for man' is obviously incorrect in the light of the foregoing discussion.

The root-idea of the Puruṣamedha or the ritual form of human sacrifice

---

obviously lies in the general practice of human sacrifice going back to the Indo-Europeans\(^1\), which we shall consider at a later stage. From very early times there has been existing a belief in the great potency and efficacy of human sacrifice. The same idea is expressed in the Puruṣāṣūkta of the R.V. where the sacrifice by gods of the Primeval Puruṣa led to the creation of the universe. The idea expressed in the Puruṣāṣūkta has close connection with the ritual of the Puruṣamedha. It is the hymns of this Sūkta that are recited at the time of sacrificing the human victim in this rite.

Keith\(^2\) has tried to connect this rite with the idea of healing the bodily infirmity of the sacrificer. On this view the basic idea behind the Puruṣamedha may be connected with the primitive idea of medicine man and healing. The healing ceremony appears only in the Śāṅkhāyana and Vaitāṇa Sūtras, which appears to have been performed not for the removal of the bodily ills of the sacrificer, but with a view to absolve him of the apparent moral sin incurred as a result of human slaughter. Therefore, the idea of healing as the original idea behind this rite does not appear to be correct. And also it cannot explain the whole of this rite. The fundamental idea\(^3\) underlying this practice appears to have been the notion that man, the highest attainable being, could be the most appropriate gift to gods and at the same time a substitute for the sacrificer himself. This idea was at the root of the belief in the efficacy and potency of human sacrifice.

**Continuity of the Puruṣamedha Tradition in later Times**

The tradition of the rite continued even after the Vedic and the Sūtra periods. In the Jain and Buddhist literature we come across picturesque details of the performance of this rite along with the exaggerated depiction of its horrors. In his commentary on the Suttanipāta, Buddhaghoṣa gives clear and concise details of the rite in a way which shows that even up to his time it may have been a living tradition. In the Cho Dinh inscriptions of Champa (c. 400 A.D.), belonging to almost the same period, there is the reference to a Puruṣamedha performed by Mahārāja Bhadravarman or one of his descendants. This again shows that, up to the 4th-5th century A.D., the Puruṣamedha was a living tradition in a country whose culture was rooted in Indian culture. This epigraphic evidence, therefore, renders

---

1. Infra, p. 116.
untenable the suggestion of Weber\textsuperscript{1} that due to the emergence of the custom that the priest should eat a portion of the offered victim, the human sacrifices involving the eating of human flesh tended to become impracticable in very early times.

In the non-ritual Hindu literature, i.e. the Mahābhārata, Vāyu Purāṇa, Bhāgavata Purāṇa and Kathāsarit-gāra, there are references to the Puruṣa-medha but in the majority of cases they are only faint echoes.

**Human Sacrifice (General)**

Floating ideas about human sacrifice throwing light on the antiquity of this practice are found in the R.V. and A.B. Among the evidences of human sacrifice found in the R.V., one of the most important is in the Puruṣasūkta\textsuperscript{2} where it is stated that the gods sacrificed Puruṣa Prājāpati who, in this way, furnished the materials for the creation of the universe. Another passage\textsuperscript{3} suggests the deliberate decision of Yama to sacrifice himself for the sake of mankind. Further, in the first book of this text, we find seven hymns supposed to have been recited by Śunahṣēpa when he was bound to a stake, obviously intended for a sacrifice\textsuperscript{4} The Aitareya Brāhmaṇa\textsuperscript{5} of the R. V. records details of the story in which the hymns of the R. V. have been connected with human sacrifice. The story relates how one Hariścandra, who had made a vow to immolate his first-born to Varuṇa, evaded his promise, how then Rohita, his son, purchased Śunahṣēpa from Ajīgarta and had him tied to a stake for sacrifice in redemption of his father’s vow to Varuṇa and how the victim was finally released. Scholars\textsuperscript{6} like Rosen and Wilson are of the opinion that the hymn of the R.V., in which we find the mention of Śunahṣēpa, cannot be associated with human sacrifice. It is true that the details of a sacrifice are not given in the hymns but it is not reasonable to expect such details in them.

Some\textsuperscript{7} also think that the reference here is to a symbolic offering, but the

---

2. R.V. X. 90.
4. R. V. I. 24 ff.
7. Ibid, pp. 91, 94.
The Śyenaciti of the Puruṣamedha

legend clearly shows that, at the time of the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, human sacrifice was fairly known and it may have been tolerated and practised. This view is further confirmed by another legend which appears in that text. It states that in the beginning the gods took human beings as sacrificial victims. From this M. Müller rightly concludes that human sacrifice may have played a definite role in the old days with the Hindus. Weber also agrees on this point.

Human sacrifice in the Vedic Ritual

It has already been shown that human slaughter was an essential ingredient of the Agnicayana and of the the Puruṣamedha sacrifice. The texts refer to a sacrifice known as Sarvamedha which also involved human sacrifice. The Rājasūya and the Asvamedha, too, required the immolation of a man. Weber's view that human victims were slaughtered in the Mahāvrata is fully supported by the Śāṅk. Śr. which refers to the procurement of a Śūdra, an Ārya, a woman and a man, an eunuch and a bald headed person in connection with this sacrifice. Thus, it is clear that human sacrifice formed an integral part of a number of Vedic rites.

Evidence and Role of Human Sacrifice in the Religion of other Indo-Aryan Peoples

As a matter of fact there are few ancient religions which can show a history completely free from the ritual practice of human sacrifice. It must have played a prominent role in the religion of the Aryan people. There is evidence of its existence among the northern peoples until late in the Christian Era. The Greek myths contain references to it and in Rome also men were sacrificed in ancient times. An ancient mythological idea that the

5. S. B. XIII. 3.6.5.
7. Śāṅk. Śr. XVII. 6. 1.
10. Ibid, loc. cit.
11. Ibid, loc. cit.
12. Ibid, loc. cit.
world and mankind originated from the sacrifice of a primeval being was possibly prevalent in a considerably wide area extending from Germany to the region of the Indo-Irans.1 This very idea is reflected in the Puruṣa-sūkta of the R.V. also. It shows the great belief in the efficacy and potency of human sacrifice in early times. Further, in the cult of Othin which was prevalent until late in the Christian Era among certain sections of the Aryan people, there is positive proof of human sacrifice, a graphic account of which has been given by Thietmar: “There is a general gathering at this place2 every nine years in the month of January, after the season at which we celebrate Epiphany. Here they sacrifice to their gods ninety-nine men and the same number of horses together with dogs and cocks which they offer in place of hawks.” In the light of this well-documented list of a number of victims intended for slaughter, the large number of victims in the Puruṣamedha is also natural. The association of hawk with human sacrifice in the Baltic regions is not without significance in connection with the Śyenaciti.

It is fairly reasonable to believe that human sacrifice which was practised among their European kinsmen was prevalent among the Aryans of India also. According to Schrader, offerings were made to heaven in the Indo-European period to purchase its favour, appease its wrath, enquire its will, or by way of returning thanks and human sacrifice must have played a prominent role in them.

The Tendency of Substitution

In other countries of the world, where human sacrifice was in vogue, there developed in course of time the tendencies of substitution as a result of the growing humanitarian ideas. The substitutes3 in some cases may have been animals, in others, effigies and dolls.

In the Vedic ritual of India also a more or less parallel development is traceable. But this tendency of substitution operates only in the sphere of the Agnicayana and there too in limited Śākhās. The Śukla Yajurveda School was largely affected by this tendency where clay or gold models were conceived as substitutes for the actual human head as well as for those of the remaining four victims. The Taittirīya School was less affected by this tendency; for, it only

recognised the head of a man, killed in battle or by an arrow-shot or by thunderbolt, as the substitute for the head of a man actually sacrificed for the purpose. It has already been indicated that the texts themselves provide evidence of the existence of forces and tendencies which were responsible for this development in the Vedic religion, i.e. the reformist tendency and the influence of the caste system. The former found its full expression in Jainism and Buddhism which in turn further influenced the Vedic ritual.

Views of Scholars on Human Sacrifice in the Vedic Ritual examined

The foregoing discussion amply reveals the prevalence of human sacrifice in the Vedic period in a general as well as in a special form, the latter being expressed in the Vedic ritual. It has generally been accepted that there is the most unmistakable trace of human sacrifice\(^1\) in the Agnicayana. So far as the Puruṣamedha or the ritual form of human sacrifice is concerned, it is quite clear that in the Vait. Śr. and Śāṅk. Śr. it involved actual human slaughter.\(^2\) But as regards its presence in connection with this rite in the texts of the two major schools of the Yajurveda, there are conflicting views. Some scholars\(^3\) think that the entire rite was symbolic. Others\(^4\) consider it to involve to some extent real human sacrifice. R. L. Mitra\(^5\) holds that the Taittiriyas did not look upon the rite as symbolic, whereas according to the Ś.B. of the Śukla Yajurveda School, all the human victims were let off. The correct position, as the discussion in the next section will reveal, is that in both the major schools some human victims were let off after paryagnikaraṇa and the remaining were actually slaughtered. The position of Kātyāyana in respect of the release and slaughter of victims is not very clear. It is just possible that he may have been influenced by those tendencies which culminated into the doctrine of Ahiṃsā and had their effect on the rite of Agnicayana too.

Hillebrandt,\(^6\) while accepting the view, hesitates to accept the sacrifice of such a large number as a believable reality. The number, however, is not

---

2. See below; e.g. Keith, H. O. S., vol. 32, p. 347.
5. J. A. S. B., 1876, p. 103.
of such a great consequence as to serve as a deterrent to the view of actual sacrifice of human victims. As already noticed,¹ the sacrifice associated with the cult of Othin involved the actual slaughter of as many as ninety-nine men besides an equal number of horses together with other animals. It is, however, important to note that all the human victims, mentioned in connection with the Purusamedha, were not slaughtered; some were released after the fire was carried around them.

III. CORRELATION OF THE ARCHAEOLOGICAL AND LITERARY EVIDENCE

The archaeological data, noticed above, clearly reveal a ritual altar of the shape of a flying bird, which was the result of one building activity reflecting the observance of rigid ritual formulas in the arrangement of the special objects placed in it. The stratigraphical evidence leads one to the conclusion that the initial stages of digging the pit, levelling of the ground and finally the construction of Vedikā no. 4, the piling of the bird-shaped altar in five layers and the preparation of smaller platforms at different levels, all formed part of one continuous effort. The shape of the altar simulating a flying bird, and also the key position occupied by the centre of the circular pit of Vedikā no. 4, full of ash and charcoal, in determining the position of the various parts and the objects of the altar, reveal a deliberate planning. The presence of a large number of human skulls and bones of animals of different species, meticulously arranged, the bricks of special shape, size and line-marks including the special brick with the portrayal of human sacrifice, all piled up in a special way, the placing of the kankar nodule encircled by bricks just at the centre of the first layer of the body, the special position of the fire-pan full of sand resting on a bed of sand spread on a small brick-platform in close proximity with a female terracotta figurine and the tortoise-shell, all these reflect deliberate setting according to definite ritual rules.

The Initial Stages of Construction

The initial stages of construction, as the archaeological evidence reveals, comprised the digging of a pit unequal in depth in different areas, the performance of a rite the traces of which have been discovered at the

¹ Supra, p. 116.
bottom of the pit in the form of a bone placed on potsherds, the piling of the sacrificial Vedikā no. 4 near the junction of the body and tail towards the right, the preparation of the ground, the erection of a mound, 8 ft. high, containing sand, gravel, clod-bricks etc. within the area of the body of the altar and then the levelling of the ground by spreading soft and well-weeded clay. The ritual texts also prescribe the same process including the preparation of the sacrificial ground by ploughing, watering and sowing it. The bone placed on potsherds at the bottom of the pit represents the initial offering of Paśu-purodāśa to Vaiśvānara in connection with dikṣā, which, as the stratigraphical evidence clearly shows, was the preliminary rite.

The Vedikā no. 4, measuring 5 ft. 3.5 ins. east-west and north-south, represents the Vedikā of the original Gārhapatya hearth which in its rectangular shape and size accords with the rules laid down by Āpastamba, prescribing a caturāsra Gārhapatya hearth measuring one vyāyāma (fathom or 6 ft.). The bricks of this Vedikā are of various shapes and sizes, some being very large and others, only clod-bricks; the absence of any special colour or line-marks indicates that they are not special bricks. The ritual texts also lay down that only Lokapuruṣa, and not special bricks, should be placed on this Vedikā.

There is also the provision for a circular Gārhapatya hearth in the Āp. Śr. and in some other texts. Corresponding to this, there has been found a circular pit, lined with bricks just close to the Vedikā mentioned above, with a radius of 4 ft. 5 ins. The entire area was filled with ash, charcoal and charred grains which furnishes evidence of a sacrificial hearth. The entire Gārhapatya Vedikā was covered with fine sand, 3 ins. in thickness, which, again, is in conformity with the ritual rules prescribing that it should be covered with sand afterwards. In the matter of the chronological sequence of building the Gārhapatya hearth after the offering of the Paśu-purodāśa to Vaiśvānara, there is complete agreement between the injunctions laid down in the texts and the stratigraphical evidence discovered at the site.

The situation of this Vedikā near the junction of the body and the tail and behind the terminal point of the right wing, at a lower level, is the same as prescribed in the texts.

The discovery of an unlined pit, below the right shoulder of the bird, full of ash and charcoal, in the same line as the centre of the Gārhapatya
and the inner joint-point of the right wing and the body, accords with the position of the Ahavaniya according to the ritual texts.¹

The next important stage in the process of construction, as the stratigraphical evidence reveals, was the building of a mound within the area of the body. This may be identified with the Uttaravedi which, according to the ritual rules, is built at this stage and in the same manner in the form of a mound of earth. Sand, gravel and clod-bricks which are required to be placed in the Uttaravedi, have been found in this mound. Afterwards, the whole ground was made level with the Uttaravedi which is in accordance with the procedure laid down in the texts.

_The Altar is a Šyenaciti_

The excavations have brought to light an altar in the form of a flying bird with wings not fully spread, the shoulders raised and the head and the beak slightly tapering. This is precisely the way in which the Šyenaciti, the principal type of the Agnici, consisting of a head, a body (middle part), two wings and a tail, is piled up. The bird represented here is the Šyena or hawk.

The total length of the available altar from beak to tail is approximately 49 ft. 8 ins. and the width is approximately 33 ft. 6 ins. However, it is significant to notice here that the same width of the altar, i.e. 33 ft. 6 ins. across the body and the two wings, has been prescribed in the T.S.B. The length and width of the body of the available altar are 19 ft. 6 ins. and 13 ft. respectively. The Śulba Sūtra of Āpastamba also gives similar dimensions, i.e. 2.5 purusas (16 ft. 10.5 ins.) and 2 purusas (13 ft. 6 ins.) respectively.

The archaeological evidence reveals that the bricks were specially piled up on the altar according to certain rules; they were not laid one upon another in a regular order which is the principle followed in the building of an ordinary brick-structure. In the ritual texts there are elaborate rules for piling the bricks and it is specifically laid down that they should be piled and not laid down upon one another in a regular order. The terms used in this connection are ciyate and cetavyam.

¹ Ś. B. X. 2. 3. 1. ff.
The right wing of the available altar shows three clear divisions in conformity with those—Pakṣa, Pakṣamadhyya and Pakṣagra—prescribed by Āpastamba.

The piling of the altar in five successive layers of bones and bricks with the intervening layers of sand and mud mortar is in accordance with the ritual procedure. The two layers from the top have been largely washed out but their unmistakable traces are still left. There was a layer of sand between the first and the second layer and ritual texts also lay down the same. There was a layer of loose earth in between every two of the remaining layers. These are evidently the purīṣa layers, the spreading of which has been prescribed in this very manner.

Layer I

Layer I of the body was piled up after making the area level with the central mound or the Uttaravedi as laid down in the ritual rules. The special objects found in this layer are identified as below:

The Kankar Nodule (Svayamāṭrṇā)

The kankar nodule with small cavities on its surface, surrounded by a set of bricks, forming a circle found at the centre of the body in the first layer, is evidently the Svayamāṭrṇā described as Śarkarā or Kṣudrapāśāṇa in the ritual texts and required to be placed at the centre of the body in this layer. Thus, the distinctive features of the kankar nodule and its central position within the ring of bricks in the first layer easily lead to its identification with the Svayamāṭrṇā.

The Fire-Pan (Ukhā)

From its distinctive characteristics and its particular position in this layer the fire-pan or the offering-stand may be identified with the Ukhā of the ritual texts according to which it should consist of three parts so as to look like three pots placed upon one another. A chord or rašañā is marked round the neck at the junction of the first and second parts, which has been described as galagatā rekha by Sāyaṇa. The fire-pan has also been called dvistānā as the dish and the base thereof simulate two breasts. Some texts prescribe that it should be round and a prādeśā or a span (about 9 ins.) wide at the top.
The prominent features of the available offering-stand are also its three parts, a short stem, a broad base, dish at the top with a width of 9 ins. and a marked carination, at the junction of the dish and the stand, made prominent by a chord. Thus, the three parts of the offering-stand, the round dish at the top with a width of 9 ins., the chord round the neck and its general resemblance with two breasts, all these are in accordance with the ritual rules.

The texts lay down that the Ukhā should be placed in the first layer, to the north of the Svayamātrīṇā, at a distance of one cubit on the pounded clay and then removed from it and placed slightly further onwards on a bed of sand. The available offering-stand was in like manner placed on sand over a brick-platform at a distance of 2 ft. 11 ins. to the north of the central kankar nodule. Further, according to the texts, the Ukhā is filled with ghee, curd, honey and sand. The dish of the available Ukhā shows traces of some sacrificial material sticking to its bottom. It was also covered with sand.

It is significant to note that the Ukhā, with its archetype in the chalcolithic dish-on-stand, is entirely unknown to the ceramic tradition of the Gangetic Valley in the third-first century B.C. It was surviving at that time only in the ritual tradition and throws valuable light on the cultural synthesis achieved in the period of the Brāhmaṇas and the Śrauta Sūtras.

The Terracotta Female Figurine

The terracotta female figurine may be identified with the goddess Sinīvāli mentioned in the texts. The distinctive features of the available figurine—the gracefulness, the complex and elaborate arrangement of the hair into braids and the decoration of the headgear with a triple pearl string, are just those mentioned in connection with the goddess Sinīvāli addressed in the ritual texts as a beautiful maiden, sukāpardā (with fair braids) and sukūrīrā (with fair head-dress). She is invoked to initiate the preparation of the Ukhā. In this altar also this figurine was placed in close association with it.

The Iron Model of a Snake

The texts of the Kṛṣṇa Yajurveda School prescribe that the head of a snake should be placed in the first layer. Here also the iron model of a snake has been discovered in this layer.
The Bones

The ritual texts prescribe the placing of the heads of five victims—a man, a horse, a bull, a ram and a he-goat in this layer. There is a provision for the placing of the human head in the northern direction after removing it from its original position.

The available archaeological evidence reveals the presence of the bones of these animals in the first layer of the body. Here also the human skull is placed in the northern direction on the tail. Bones of elephant, goat, cattle and some other animals (not yet identified) have been found in this layer. Reference to the bone of elephant occurs in a Buddhist text. A clear mention of domestic and wild animals in connection with this layer is found in the T. S. B. Besides skull, other skeletal material has also been used in this layer in association with the bricks. In the texts we find the repeated identification of bricks with bones. There is the reference to asthīṣṭakā and a clear provision for the restoration of the trunks of animals, evidently deposited earlier, by placing the heads in the first layer. All these clearly indicate that the texts envisage the placing of other skeletal material including parts of body, besides, the skulls of man and four other animals in this layer.

The Tortoise

The shell of a tortoise has been found to the east of the Ukha. The texts lay down that a live tortoise should be placed to the east of the Ukha so that the altar may not be turned into a Smaśānaciti. The presence of the tortoise-shell thus conclusively proves that it is a fire altar (Śyenaciti) and not otherwise.

The Bricks

The most significant brick, placed at a distance of 1 ft. 9 ins. from the central kankar nodule towards the front, may be identified with the Aśāḍhā on the basis of its shape, size, line-marks, colour, texture and placing. The trapezoid shape, the three line-marks—curved lines, straight lines, dots etc.—the deep red colour indicating that materials like iron-dust were mixed with the clay of which it was prepared and its placing towards the front at a short distance—all these are in accordance with the rules laid down in the texts in respect of this brick. Besides, it is described as devalaksma (bearing the
characteristic marks of the sacrifice) which is borne out in this case by the portrayal of the scene of human sacrifice on it. This evidence leads to the conclusion that the sacrifice (Puruṣamedha) was performed on this altar after its completion.

The bricks\(^1\) on the body, which have been tentatively identified on the basis of their line-marks (three on each), their especially red colour and placing are – Dvīṇajas (1), Retāḥsik (2), Viśvajyotis (1), Rātaryas (2), Asāḍhā (1), Prāṇabhyās (40) – a set of ten forming a circle round the centre and a row of ten on each of the three diagonals, those on the fourth diagonal being washed out, Apāṣyās (10) – a set of five along with the frontal fringe and another along the right fringe. There are other bricks also which may be identified as Lokāmphuṇās.

Finally, the body was sealed by a layer of sand about 3 ins. thick, of which there were no traces on the head, wings and the tail. This is in conformity with the evidence of the texts which prescribe that the sand should be deposited only on the body and not on other parts of the hawk-shaped altar.

Layer II

According to the texts, there should be no brick at the centre of the second layer. Here also the evidence shows the same. The ritual rules provide for laying down 20 bricks round the centre so as to form a square. Here, too, 20 bricks have been arranged round the centre. They comprise Apāṣyās, Āśvinis, Vaiśvadevis and Prāṇabhyās. The other special bricks on the body may be tentatively identified as five Chandasyās along the right fringe of the body, four along the frontal fringe and three along the left fringe. There are a number of other bricks also which may be identified with Lokāmphuṇās. The bricks of this layer are triangular, rectangular, oblong, square etc. and have got a number of line-marks which is in conformity with the procedure laid down in the texts.

The bones recovered from this layer are all animal bones. In the texts also some bricks have been identified with various animals like he-goat, ram, bull, lion, steer, calf etc. At the centre of the layer the jaw-bone of a

---

1. The detailed identification of the bricks of all the layers on the basis of the Śulba Sūtras shall be discussed in a subsequent note.
buffalo has been recovered. It is interesting to note that in the Ś.B. the fire altar has been identified with a mighty buffalo.¹

Layer III

The Bricks

An especially red brick with a hole has been found at the centre of this layer which may be identified with the Svayamātrānā or the self-perforated brick. According to the texts, this brick should be laid down at the centre of the first, third and fifth layers. Other special bricks recovered from the area of the body are—1 Viśvajotis, 7 Prānabhṛts on the frontal fringe, 2 Vālakhilyās close to the row of the Prānabhṛts, 3 Chandasyās along the left fringe and 12 along the right fringe. There are a number of Lokamprānās and clod-bricks (Yaṭuṣmatiś) also. All the special bricks are marked with three lines.

Skeletal Material in Layer III

This layer has yielded the largest number of bones with a preponderance of human bones. This is in agreement with the procedure in the ritual texts as this layer specially represents the restoration² of the various parts of the body of Prajāpati. Ten bricks are identified with his head and some others, have been equated with the upper and lower parts of his feet, neck, hip, thighs, knees, etc. This layer of the altar has also yielded three complete human skulls, ten skull pieces and other skeletal material.

Layers IV and V

The available archaeological evidence clearly reveals traces of the fourth and fifth layers which have, however, been considerably destroyed by a subsequent pit. Thus, the altar was piled up in five layers in accordance with the ritual procedure.

The Sadas

The long platform behind the tail may be identified with the Sadas

² Ś.B. VIII. 3. 4. 11.
which was one of the constituents of the altar of the grand Vedic sacrifices.

*Association of this Altar with the Taittirīya School of the Kṛṣṇa Yajurveda*

There are a number of special features in the present fire altar which tend to suggest its association with the Taittirīya School. In the first place, the placing of the bones of domestic and wild animals along with the bricks reflects a ritual procedure marked by rigidity and conservatism, especially characteristic of this school. Secondly, the altar shows the use of a circular Ukhā, the building of a rectangular Gārhapatya Vedikā and the placing of the iron model of a snake in the first layer, which are features confined to the Taittirīya School alone.

*It was the Altar of the Puruṣamedha*

There is sufficient evidence to conclude that this fire altar was piled up for the performance of the Puruṣamedha. On the most prominent brick, Aśādhā, appears the scene of a human sacrifice—a man tied to a Yūpa with a rope and some instrument falling down on his neck. This reminds us of the Aśvamedha type of coins\(^1\) representing on the obverse a horse before the Yūpa. It is also quite obvious that the multiplicity of human skulls, jaws and other bones in the available altar can not be associated with any sacrifice other than the Puruṣamedha. The other sacrifices like the Agnicayana, Rājasūya and Aśvamedha require the immolation of only one human victim and it is only in the Puruṣamedha that the slaughter of a number of them has been prescribed.

---

\(^1\) e. g. coins of Samudragupta and Kumāragupta,
PART TWO
CHAPTER NINE

THE AGNICAYANA

Introduction

The basic conception of Yajña (sacrifice) has been traced back to the Indo-European period. But the evidence is meagre. A comparative study of the Rgveda and the Avesta has, however, revealed clear traces of the prevalence of the cult of sacrifice. In the Vedic literature the ritual was elaborated by generations of priestly families. By the middle Vedic period, the sacrifice with all its cumbersome and minute details, acquires enormous significance in the Brāhmaṇas. The Śrauta Sūtras of Baudhāyana, Kātyāyana, Āpastamba etc. furnish elaborate accounts of several sacrifices. The Upaniṣads with their emphasis on the way of knowledge, and more especially Buddhism and Jainism, offered a serious opposition to the institution of Vedic sacrifice. But the literary, epigraphic, numismatic and archaeological evidence clearly reveals that, even in the succeeding centuries, the tradition of Vedic sacrifice did not languish but continued to have a marked place in the Brahmanical scheme of religious practices. Kings like Khāravela, Samudragupta and many others gloried in the performance of sacrifices like Rājasūya and Āsvamedha.

The sacrifice is essentially an act of homage to the deities which consists of a gift, an oblation (havis) thrown into the fire with a view to obtain benefits, prosperity etc. Keith holds the view of sacrifice as a gift. Hubert and Mauss, on the other hand, view it as a consecration, a movement from the profane to the sacred. Macdonell, however, is right in stating that in their general character Vedic sacrifices are mostly supplicatory, never thank-offerings. In the Brāhmaṇas the distinction between the sacrifice and magical art has diminished to a consi-

3. Ibid.
erable extent. The essential constituents of Vedic sacrifice (Yāga) are dravya (material), devatā (deity) and tyāga (abandonment).

Vedic sacrifices are classified in many ways. Some favour their division into nitya (periodic) and naimittika (occasional or special). From another standpoint they are divided into Gṛhya (domestic) and Śrauta (public). The Śrauta sacrifices comprise the Hāvīryajñas and the Soma sacrifices (Somasarasāthās). The former essentially differ from the latter in so far as they do not employ the sīman singers. Some are inclined to think that the fundamental and typical Vedic sacrifices are those of the Soma. The Agniṣṭoma, Mahāvrata, Vājapeya, Rājasūya, Aśvamedha, Puruṣamedha etc. are the various types of the Soma sacrifice. These sacrifices, involving a considerable amount of material, complex procedure, a large number of priests and huge gifts, could have been performed by kings and wealthy men only.

The Agnicayana or the piling of the fire altar is one of the aṅgas of the Somayāga which is compulsory in the Mahāvrata and optional in other Soma sacrifices. This rite extends over a period of one year. The Ś. B. too is in favour of this period, though it also refers to another school, according to which, the performance of this rite should take two years.

The performance of the Agnicayana starts on the full moon day of Uttarā Phālgunī. This day, according to the Ś.B., is the very mouth of the year, and thus the rite starts with the beginning of the new year. According to another view, however, it starts on the Amāvasyā. The Āp. Śr. prescribes that the sacrificer, desirous of piling up the fire altar on the Amāvasyā, should perform

2. Louis Renou, Vedic India, p. 104.
4. इत्यतः समस्तात्र नियमः... Ibid, XVI. 2. Also Vait. Śr. V. 28. 2.
5. अन्मिक्षयन्य सांस्कृतिकः... Mimāṃsākṣa, vol. I, p. 54.
6. समस्ते सन्त्याज्ञविनियमानः... Ś. B. VI. 1. 3. 20; हैक्षाहाः... Ibid, VI. 1. 3. 20.
7. उत्तरस्व फाल्गुनीयो गर्भविनियमः... Kāṭ. Śr. XVI. 5.
8. नवम फाल्गुनाय... एव इ वन्यवृत्त प्रथम रात्रिवेदन्तात्ययं... Ś. B. VI. 2. 2. 18.
9. अमावस्यायामालेतां द्वीपा/हैक्षाहारस्वते... Ibid, VI. 2. 2. 16; अमावस्यायामेव। Kāṭ. Śr. XVI. 7
the Ukhāsambharana ceremony on the full moon day.¹ This appears to be an attempt at reconciling the two views.

**Types of the Agniciti**

The ritual texts prescribe various types of the fire altar for different purposes and objects. The T. S. B. speaks of as many as ten types² of the Agniciti:

1. **Chandaściti** (prescribed for one desirous of cattle);
2. **Śyenaciti** (prescribed for one desirous of heaven);
3. **Kaṅkaciti** (prescribed for one desirous of a head in the yonder world);
4. **Alajaciti** (prescribed for one desirous of support);
5. **Praugaciti and Ubbayatath-praugaciti** (prescribed for one desirous of repelling foes);
6. **Rathacakraściti** (prescribed for one desirous of repelling foes as if with a thunderbolt *Vajra*);
7. **Droṇaciti** (prescribed for one desirous of food);
8. **Samūhyaciti** (prescribed for one desirous of cattle);
9. **Paricāyyaciti** (prescribed for one desirous of village) and
10. **Śmaśānaciti** (prescribed for one desirous of the world of fathers).

---

1. अग्नि केऽपमाणोऽभावाया पौरणमाणाकारायायं बीतान्तरे। अप. स्र. XVI. 1. 1.
2. छन्दायं भिन्नति भनुकः...देवान्तिर् भिन्नति सुर्यकाम: भेजे तब भवस्म संपीत: श्रेयं एव भूता सुर्मो लोक पति भक्त्विन्नति भिन्नति य: कामयेत श्रीविष्णुमिदमिदः अतर्जिनिः भिन्नति चत्वारिः प्रतिनिधिकाम:...प्राप्तिः प्राप्तिः धन्याविन्नति...उपयोगो भिन्नति य: कामयेत प्रजातान्मात्त्वादुदेव...रचनांि कृति कृति भाव्यान्तिकाः एव रङ्गो वृत्त्वय भाव्यान्तिकाः प्रहरति...इति ितिति भक्त्विन्नति बालकांशोऽर्जुनयोऽविन्नति इति य: कामयेत पितुः। त. स. ब. V. 4. 11.
In the M.S.\textsuperscript{1} also we get similar details regarding the types of the Agniciti.

The Ś. B\textsuperscript{2} mentions the Suparṇaciti and its derived forms as well, viz. Drōṇaciti, Rathacakraciti, Kaṅkaciti, Praugaciti, Ubbayataḥ-prauga citi and Samuhyapuriṣa, but preference has definitely been given to the Suparṇaciti.

The Baud. Śr.\textsuperscript{3} refers to all the citis of the T.S.B. except nos. 8 and 9. But it also mentions an additional citi, i.e. Kūrmaciti which is prescribed for one desirous of winning Brahmaloka.\textsuperscript{4} In the Āp. Śulb.\textsuperscript{5} the types of the Agniciti are the same as in the T.S.B. The Kūrmaciti of Baudhāyana does not figure in this text. But we find in it the mention of Upacāyyaciti, the object of which is the same as that of Paricāyyaciti, i.e. the possession of a village.\textsuperscript{6} Both the terms possibly stand for one and the same type.

In the Kāt. Śr.\textsuperscript{7} the details regarding the types of the fire altar are the same as in the Ś.B.

It is important to note that the Samuhyaciti, Upacāyyaciti and Paricāyyaciti are simply Upadhānaciti\textsuperscript{8} which means that they are distinguished from one another on the basis of the mantras only.

The Suparṇaciti or the Śyenaciti – the most Important Type

In the Ś.B.\textsuperscript{9} the Suparṇaciti is given preference over other types. In the commentary on the Āp. Śulb., Kapardi\textsuperscript{10} and Karavinda\textsuperscript{11} cite from an ancient

1. M. S. III. 4. 7.
2. एतया विष्कुताभिमंथान्यां विष्णुति ज्ञानिति श्रेष्ठिति वा रक्षणिति वा कषायिति वा प्रगाढ्युिति वा वन्यवहं वा समुद्रवहरिर वा न तथा क्षुद्यधारा पदक्षेत्रित्वं गर्भ परिवृक्ते धूर्तमपालिते सुपर्नामि नित्यायायः। Ś.B. VI. 7. 2. 8.
3. Baud. Śr. XVII. 28-30; XXX. 8-20.
4. कृमिजित्वं जित्वा त्य: वास्यति वन्यालोकभिज्ञेयमिति। Ibid, XXX. 20.
6. परिचायन्तः विनियोग ग्रामकाम इति विज्ञायेत। उपचायय जित्वैत ग्रामकाम इति विज्ञायेत। Ibid, p. 225.
7. Kāt. Śr. XVI. 152, 154.
8. Āp. Śulb., p. 225 (Kapardi Bhāsya).
9. Supra, fn. 2.
10. शुल्कान्तरे च 'श्रेष्ठिति ग्रामकाम इति' इति। Āp. Śulb., p. 129.
11. शुल्कान्तरे च श्रेष्ठिति 'ग्रामकाम इति'। Ibid, p. 131.
Śulba Śūtra to the effect that the Śyenaciti occupies the first place. In the commentary on the same text by Sundararāja, it is held that 'the Śyenaciti is eternal' and the mantra with which it is associated clearly shows that Śyena and Suparna in this context are the same.¹

Now the question arises whether and how the Suparnāciti and the Śyenaciti are the same.

The types of citis, which are said to have been derived from the Suparnāciti in the Ś.B. and Kāṭ. Śr., are regarded as secondary forms of the Śyenaciti in the Āp. Śulba.² From this it is quite clear that the two are the same. The Bhaṭṭacandrikā (Saṅkara) also leads to the conclusion that the Śyenaciti resembled the Śyena bird from the point of view of its concrete shape³ and the same was deemed as possessing the shape of Suparna, as the mantra containing the word "Suparna"⁴ was associated with it. Pt. Chinnaswami Śāstri⁵ has expressed the traditional view, according to which, Suparnaciti is only another name of the Śyenaciti which occupies the first place.

The Ś.B. and Kāṭ. Śr. of the Śukla Yajurveda School prefer the term Suparnaciti for which the T.S.B. and the Śūtras of the Kṛṣṇa Yajurveda School adopt the name Śyenaciti.

It would be worthwhile to examine the connotations of the two terms Suparna and Śyena. In the R.V.⁶ 'Suparna', literally meaning 'well-winged', stands for the 'eagle' or 'vulture'. The term 'Śyena' also most probably means 'eagle' in this text.⁷ It has been mentioned as a swift and strong bird of prey.⁸ The Śyena is said to be the father of Suparna⁹ and thus both are conceived as related to each other. In the post-Ṛgvedic period, as the evidence of A. V. shows, the

---

1. अनेन श्वेनचितिनिल्यति जावते। मूर्खण्ड्व भवति, 'पुष्पांति सङ्कल्पना' इत्यादि। Ibid, p. 134.
5. श्वेनचितितस्य मूर्खण्ड्वित्योजकराणामच्या प्रायवर्ण प्रायवर्ण। Yajñya Tattvaprakāsa, p. 93.
6. द्रासुपर्णेः सब्वसहायः, R. V. I. 164. 20.
8. Ibid.
9. में सुपर्णं पराक्ष: श्वेनस्य पुत्र आभारत। R. V. X. 144. 4.
Śyena appears to have connoted the ‘falcon’ or ‘hawk’.\(^1\) The same text shows that the two terms became interchangeable.\(^4\) The swift-flying Śyena was supposed to bring the Soma from heaven\(^8\) and the Suparna\(^4\) was also associated with swift flight to heaven and with amṛta. Under these circumstances, both these terms could be easily identified.

In this connection it is significant to notice that the Śaḍ. B.\(^5\) mentions the Śyena rite as a magical and malevolent practice which was performed with the object of injuring enemies. In his commentary Sāyana\(^6\) explains that the Śyenayāga is the vikṛti—modified or derived form—of the Śyena. Now if it was at all derived from the Śyenacitī why and how was the name Śyena given to it? It is well known that the bird Śyena is quick to overpower other birds and this rite was also intended to overpower and injure enemies. Moreover, having been prominently used in the magical setting of the A. V., the Śyena must have acquired a special magical significance. Under these circumstances, the name Śyena which was already associated with the prakṛti could have easily been extended to the vikṛti also.

**Significance of the Agnicayana**

A great symbolic and mystic significance has been attached to the Agnicayana. Prajāpati, the creator of the universe, who has been dismembered, is constantly identified\(^7\) with the fire altar, the piling of which represents the restoration of his body.

In the Ś.B. there are some significant myths regarding the dismemberment of the body of Prajāpati. According to one myth which may be traced back to the Puruṣasūkta of the R.V.,\(^8\) the gods sacrificed the creator Puruṣa

---

2. श्वेनो नृसङ्का दिव्यः सुर्यः। सहस्त्राणाष्ट्रायोऽविवोधः।। A. V. VII. 41. 2.
5. अन्तः श्वेनामस्यवर्तनं वर्णत। Śaḍ. B. III. 8, p. 24.
6. श्वेनस्तव्यक्तिनिवर्तनाः यथासंप्रथाः। Com. of Sāyana on Śaḍ. B. IV. 2, p. 66.
8. दैव यथार्थं तत्त्वां अवधारः स्ववः। R.V. X. 90.15. यथार्थं अवधारं देवस्तानि यथासंप्रथाः। Ibid, X. 90.16. यथार्थं अवधारः प्रजापतिस्यस्य। Sāyana on Ibid.
Prajāpati and the parts of his body were taken away by various gods, which are restored by the rite of the fire altar. In another myth we find that Prajāpati was in the beginning partly mortal and partly immortal. Being afraid of death, he transformed himself into clay and water. The gods searched out and found him in these two elements and then they made a brick out of them. The piled up fire altar symbolising Prajāpati contains both his mortal — the hair on the mouth, the skin, the flesh, the bone, the marrow — and the immortal — the mind, the voice, the vital air, the eye and the ear — parts. The five mortal parts are represented in the altar by the five layers of earth and the five immortal ones, by the five layers of bricks. Through this fire altar Prajāpati finally becomes immortal. According to a third myth, however, Prajāpati, after creating the creatures, himself became disjointed and got immanent in time — year and season — space and matter and his restoration is brought about by Agni through the process of the Agnicayana.

Thus the essence of piling the fire altar consists in the reconstruction and restoration of Prajāpati who, having been sacrificed as a Puruṣa, became the source of the creation of the universe in all its parts. As this sacrifice is conceived as a constant process, it is deemed essential that this disjointed god must be reconstructed and renewed in the form of the fire altar again and again. This rite has thus a cosmogonic significance. The piling of the fire altar, representing the restoration of the dismembered Prajāpati, symbolises the cosmic unifying process comprehending the activities of the gods, and the sacrificer, by participating in this act, is considered as divinified.

The Sun, the god Agni, Prajāpati, the sacrificer and the fire altar are constantly conceived as identical. Various accessories of the rite are identified with metres and also the parts of the year which is the symbol of time. It is in the Ś.B. that the year is conceived as identical with Prajāpati and, thus, time is also brought into the complex web of this identification.

1. यान्त्र तास्तटेनु (मे) एकुपम्पक्षूष्ठ्वा प्रजापितिम्बलाव प्रजाओपसुत स प्रजा: मृत्यो वेदांकामसाभा लोकाः प्यावनत्तमानिन महाबधक: देवाः यमानं यमाद्रिः। Ś.B. X. 2. 2.1.
2. प्रजापिति विस्तर्यदेवाश्रमसार्य: केषकांसस्य प्राणानी व विबंधकर्मि च महामादाभिनिर्माण इति, Ś.B. VIII. 3.1.5.
3. Ś.B. X. 1.3.2-7; X. 1. 4. 1.
4. Ś.B. VI. 1. 2.
5. तमिन: सक्तान्तरगतेऽप्रजापिति सन्तमनिर्माणात्। Ś.B. VI. 1. 2. 13.
In the bird-shaped altar there is the underlying idea of the bird flying to the sky with which the sacrificer, who is identified with Prajāpati, is to attain heaven. The chief benefit accruing from this rite is, thus, the attainment of the divine nature of immortality and heavenly abode like Prajāpati.

**Importance of the Agnicayana**

The Ś.B. speaks volumes of the importance of the Āgnicātī. The fire altar symbolises all the important sacrifices. The animal victim is compared to the Agnyādheya, the oblations of which are represented by the collection of material for the fire-pan. The initiation ceremony, in connection with this rite, is equated with the Agnihotra. The driving about and the taking down of the ashes of the fire-pan, constitute the Darśapūrṇamāsā. The building of Gārhapatya hearth is the Cāturmāsya. The sowing of seeds on the prepared site of the fire altar is compared to Ištis. What takes place after the all-herb sowing and prior to the piling of the layers is taken to symbolize the Paśubandha. The first layer is the Soma Sacrifice, the second Rājasūya, the third Vājapeya, the fourth Āsvamedha and the fifth Agnisava. The sāman sung on the altar is the Mahāvrata and the rite performed after the shower of wealth, is equated with the Grāhamedha.

**Object of the Śyenacītī**

It has already been noticed that the Śyenacītī is the principal citi. It is conceived as the prakṛti or model of all other citis. The objects of the piling of various citis have already been noticed. The primary object of the Śyenacītī is the attainment of heaven. In some of the Sarhītās also we find that the bird is invoked to fly to heaven; this symbolises the sacrificer's desired

---

1. सर्वे हृदते यज्ञोऽर्थमिनिष्ठतः। स गतयुग्माग्न्यते, तदम्प्रायस्यम्बुष्ट्यम् यदुः संभारित तात्म्याम्बोध्यह्सीध्यम् यदृच्चते तद- 
   प्रतिमोहस्य सर्वं सामप्रायसिद्धि तेष्णस्मितावह वहः...
   यदृच्छते प्रतिमोहस्य सर्वं सामप्रायसिद्धि तेष्णस्मितावह
   ...Ś.B. X. 1. 5.1-2.
2. सम्प्रोक्त्वा: प्रथमा चित्तः। यद्याचीन्त सम्ब्रह्मो राजसूतो द्वितिया वा जैसूतो प्रभुवत्सलवमेधवतौ चतुर्थप्रतिविद्धीष: पश्चायां 
   वैशिष्ट्य: साममिति: परागायति तत्समवस्य यदृच्छत: पुस्तान्जलयः...
   यदृच्छत: वासान्तार्यां तेन गृहोपस्थतां तो विन वाजात्नायनिष्ठातः। Ś.B. X. 1. 5. 3.
3. Supra, pp. 132, 133.
4. मुप्यक्षिपि गर्भनास्तिवं गुर्जरस्य: पत्र। T.S. IV. 1. 10. 5; K.S. XVI. 8; M.S. II.7.8; V.S. XII. 4.
ascent to heaven. The Š.B.² continues this idea. The evidence of the T.S.B. that this altar should be piled up by one, desirous of heaven³, has already been noticed. The Baud. Šr. and Āp. Šulb. repeat the same.⁴

The destruction of and the protection from foes, and the attainment of material prosperity are taken to be the subsidiary objects⁵ of the performance of this rite.

The Śyenaciti not the same as the Śyenayāga

Attention has already been drawn to the Śyena rite as a magical and malevolent rite performed with a view to injure enemies. It has also been noticed that the two types of the Agniciti—Rathacakra and Praugaciti bear abhiccārika significance, for they are intended to repel or destroy foes.⁶ However, the evidence is quite clear on this point that the Śyenaciti and the abhiccārika rite known as Śyenayāga, even if the latter may be derived from the former, are by no means identical.⁷

The procedure of the Śyenayāga, as described in a number of ritual texts, shows certain peculiar features which are conspicuous by their absence in that of the Śyenaciti. In the first place, the priests engaged in the Śyenayāga are to be selected from the Vṛātyas⁸ and they are required to wear deep red turbans and clothes.⁹ Secondly, the Yāpas in this rite are made of tilvaka or bādhaka trees.¹⁰ Thirdly, the daksīṇā, given in this rite, consists of animals with bodily defects, such as one-eyed and one-horned.¹¹ Lastly, it was an ekāha¹² or one-day sacrifice.

1. Š.B. VI. 7. 2. 6.
2. Supra. p. 131.
5. Supra, p. 131.
7. त्र्यात्मकां बैद्यानं पुनर्निवावानात्मकां युक्त अण्णत्वम्, Lāṭ. Šr. VIII. 5.1.
8. कौतिकाण्डे ओर्निन्साती स्नितिष्ठ त्र्यात्मकां युक्त अण्णत्वम्, Lāṭ. Šr. VIII. 5.4; Kāt. Šr. XXII. 87; Āṣv. Šr. III. 7.4; Āp. Šr. XXII. 4. 23.
9. तात्त्वको बायको वा वृत्तया, Sad. B. III. 8, pp. 24-25; Kāt. Šr. XXII. 81.
10. नव नव दलन्ति इति नवनवियोगसां दलात् काणिकोरुक्कर्णिनाम्, Lāṭ. Šr. VIII. 5.16; Cf. Kāt. Šr. XXII. 91.
11. Kāt. Šr. XXII. 1; for other ‘ekāha’ rites involving similar ceremonies, see Pañcaviṃśa Brāhmaṇa, XVI-XIX.
As against this, the Agnicayana, being an aśiga of the Somayāga, required sixteen priests—Adhvyanyakāṇaḥ, Brahmagāṇaḥ, Hotṛgaṇaḥ and Udgāṭṛgaṇaḥ, each group comprising four learned Brāhmaṇas, and not Vṛāyas. The same holds good for the Śyenacitī also which is the principal type of the Agnicitī. Further, unlike the priests of the Śyenayāga, they are not to appear in any peculiar dress. The wood⁴, used in the performance of this rite, is of khadira, palāśa, udumbara, kāṛṣmaṇa, viśeṇkata and śamī and not of tilvāka or bāḍhaka as in the Śyenayāga. Finally, the daksinā of animals with bodily defects is simply inconceivable in the context of the Śyenacitī the main purpose of which is to attain heaven.

In the Śāṅk. Sr.² there is reference to the varieties of the abhicāra rite, viz. Sandaṁśa, Iṣu, Vājra, Śyena, Ajira etc. These are malevolent rites intended to bring about the destruction of foes. In the Śabarabhāṣya,³ these rites are dubbed as immoral as they involve hīṃsā. The Śyenacitī, however, is not to be confused with this abhicārika Śyena rite.

Shape and Size of the Śyenacitī⁴

The Śyenacitī is piled in the shape of a flying Śyena⁵ (hawk) with specially prepared bricks which are laid down according to a definite ritualistic procedure,⁶ unlike that followed in the construction of a regular brick structure in which bricks are placed upon one another.

---

1. खाडिरी पालशी, डूंबरी, मकरस्यामि कर्मयभिः बैककुती शमीपरि बो यथ यय्ययो बुजः पक्षाः। आप. श्र. XVI. 1.7.
2. संदेरुस्तीमातिवृक्षों ध्येयाजाति मूर्तानां शुभविचार्यान्त्रादि गच्छति। शेनात्वचिन्तयोऽध्ययः। शान्त. श्र. XIV. 22. 4.
3. कौज़ाः? व. प्रत्ययाय, वेऊन, वच, इत्यादिवयवादः। ततो अन्यों धर्मं उक्ति यो भवत्।।। हिस्सा हि सा।।। Mīmāṃsādārśānam I. 1. 2; also Śabarabhāṣya, tr MM. G N. Jha, vol. I, p. 7.
4. The detailed discussion of the measurements of the Śyenacitī on the basis of the Sulba Sūtras shall be taken up in a subsequent note. Here, it is proposed to notice only the general features of it. However, see Baudhāyana Sulba, Āpastamba Sulba, Kātyāyana Sulba, Mānava Sulba, Maitrāyanīya Sulba and Varāha Sulba; also Thibaut, The Sulbasūtras; Bibhutibhusan Dutta, The Science of the Sulba.
6. चौक्ते इति निन्दयते; न बनयाच्छंदव्यमिति वा। Kapardibhāṣya on the Āp. Sulb., p. 129.
We find that emphasis is laid on the shape of the altar resembling the natural Śyena. There is a clear provision for the head of the bird also. It has been mentioned that the general features of the Śyena are long and outstretched wings which are curved, a tail comparatively narrow near the body and broad at the end, a large body (ātma) and a head. The head and the body should be somewhat oval (īśanānāda).  

The Āp. Śulba. refers to the three parts of the wing—pākṣa, pākṣāgra and pākṣamadhya (the joint of the wing and body).

The fire altar, on the whole, measures 7 puruṣas. The number 7 possesses a mythological significance. According to the Ś.B., Puruṣa Prajāpatti was created by gods by transforming 7 puruṣas into one. Thus, the fire altar symbolising Prajāpatti is also to measure 7 puruṣas, the body measuring 4 puruṣas and the wings and the tail 3. Each wing as well as the tail is to measure 1 puruṣa.

In the Āp. Śulb, however, it is laid down that the body should measure 2 puruṣas and its width should be 2.5 puruṣas. Thus the cross measurement across the body and the two wings (each measuring puruṣa) extended by an ell, gives the total length of 33 ft. 6 ins.

*The Sacrifice of the Five Victims*

Here it is proposed to discuss the rite of the sacrifice of the five victims—a man, a horse, a bull, a ram and a he-goat, an essential ingredient of the Agnicayana by analysing the evidence of the texts of the different schools. The

---

1. वक्कलो भवति भवति। Āp. Śulb., p. 232.  
2. अनुसारः व्यस्तस्थितिः व्यस्तस्थितिः। Com. of Kapardi on ibid, p. 232.  
3. वक्कलो भवति। K.S.B., XX.  
4. अनुसारः व्यस्तस्थितिः। M.S.B. III. 2. 4.  
5. वक्कलो भवति। सूत्राणां व्यस्तस्थितिः। K.S.B. XX.  
6. आत्मा भवति। Āp. Śulb., p. 237.
Sukla Yajurveda School regards it as the primary rite to be performed at the very beginning. But in the texts of the Kṛṣṇa Yajurveda, however, it occurs along with the Śānidhenī verses at a later stage after the preparation of the Ukhā. The heads of these victims are to be placed in the first layer of the altar.

Let us take up the Kṛṣṇa Yajurveda School first. In the T.S. these sacrificial victims have been classified into dvipada and catuspada. The T.S.B. gives detailed provisions for making the human heads medhya or fit for sacrifice and for the restoration of life to it. The head of the human victim, which is initially considered amedhya, is to be approached and treated with 21 beans and thus made fit for sacrifice.

Commenting on the passage in question, Sāyana explains that the unsacrificial portion of the head is taken out and then, by treating with 21 maṣas or beans it is made medhya. The rite of the restoration of life is performed by placing the head on an ant-hill with seven holes, which is also intended to make it fit for sacrifice. Then the Yamaṇāthā is recited with a view to redeem the head from Yama. The provision for the restoration of life to the human head and the recitation of the Yamaṇāthā with the expression ‘Comrades of death’ occurring in it, clearly indicate that the actual sacrifice of a human victim is intended here.

The other four animal heads required are of a horse, a bull, a ram, and a he-goat.

The Sūtras of the Kṛṣṇa Yajurveda School closely follow the line laid down in the T.S.B. However, they contain some additions and variations also.

1. Ś.B. VI. 2.1; Kāṭ. Sr. XVI. 5.
2. T.S.B. V. 1.8, 9; Āp. Sr. XVI. 6, 7.
4. एकविष्ठया मार्थ: पुरुसर्वमेवफळेनधेत्यस्मेवत् मार्थ: अमेव पुरुसंवमेवनेवस्मेवत् निरवदाय मेवत् कुलाद्भुतति। T.S. Pr. V. 1.8.
5. ‘अमेव,’ ‘मार्थ:’ विरोधिनां समाधिवर्गनिवार्यां तत्त्वादेव व्यवहारां तत्त्वादेव समाधिवर्गनिवार्यां। Sāyana on T. S. B. V. 1.8, p. 105.
6. वृष्म या एतस्म प्रायोगमेव यत्रिपप्रशोपमेवं समाधिवर्गनिवार्यां व्यवहारां तत्त्वादेव समाधिवर्गनिवार्यां। T.S. B. V. 1.8.
7. यात्रार्थः वषुप्रायकत्वतः यथाश्रयत्व परिवद्याय यमाधियामः परिवद्यायः यमाधिवद्यात्। T.S. B. V. 1.8.
8. E. g. पुरुसार्वमेवस्मेवत् निरवदाय मेवत् कुलाद्भुतति। S.B. VI. 2. 1. 15; Baud. Sr. X. 9.
According to the Baud. Śr., the human head may be obtained without actually killing a man; it may be of a Vaiśya (and not of a Brāhmaṇa, Rājanya or Śūdra), killed in battle. Out of the heads of the other four victims—horse, bull, ram and he-goat—that of the horse may also be of one killed in battle. The method of obtaining the two heads and the specification of the caste of the human victim are additional rules prescribed by the Śūtrakāra. The Āp. Śr. further extends the option by laying down that the human head may be of a Vaiśya or a Rājanya, either killed by an arrow or lightning-stroke. The Vaik. Śr. and the Sat. Śr. repeat the same. The Āp. Śr. prescribes additional rules that for the purpose of obtaining the heads, the four animals should be uncastrated and that the heads of all the five victims should be coated with clay. Unlike the Baud. Śr., Āp. Śr., Vaik. Śr. and Sat. Śr. do not recognise the head of a horse killed in battle. They are in favour of actually killing a horse for this purpose.

The Baud. Śr. mentions only 7 beans in connection with making the head medhya, but the Āp. Śr., Vaik. Śr. and Sat. Śr. refer to 28 beans. Further, according to Baud. Śr., all the heads should be placed on the ant-hill for the purpose of the restoration of life, but the Āp. Śr., Vaik. Śr. and Sat. Śr. follow the T.S.B. here and lay down that only the human head should be placed on it.

Now let us examine the evidence of the Śukla Yajurveda School in this connection. The V.S. also refers to two classes of paśu—dvipada and catustpada. The Ś.B. gives a detailed account of the theory of the pañcapaśu. It is stated that Prajāpati was at one time searching for Agni who saw five animals—the purusa (man), the horse, the bull, the ram and the he-goat and entered into them. In the course of his search for Agni, Prajāpati also saw these five animals. As they were seen by him they are called paśu. Then he wished to fit those animals—

1. संग्रामे हतयोरस्वस्य च मृत्युस्थि विवेच्यते. Baud. Śr. X. 9.
2. मृत्युस्तिः वास्तिः संग्रामो वास्तिः. Āp. Śr. XVI. 6. 2.
3. Vaik. Śr. XXIX/ XVIII. 3.
4. Sat. Śr. XI. 1. 67.
5. ...पुनर्जले मुक्तमि. Āp. Śr. XVI. 7.1. अर्थ द्वारा वास्तिः संग्रामो वास्तिः प्रस्तावितं वास्तिः. Ibid, XVI. 7.12. See also Vaik. Śr. XXIX/XVIII. 4.
6. Baud. Śr. X.9; Āp. Śr. XVI. 6.2; Vaik. Śr. XXIX/XVIII. 3; Sat. Śr. XI.67 also prescribes the option of 24 beans.
7. Baud. Śr., ibid; Āp. Śr. XVI. 6.3; Vaik. Śr. XXIX/XVIII. 3; Sat. Śr. XI.68.
8. V.S. XIII. 50.
the form of Agni—into his own self. He sacrificed them for different gods—the 
puṣa for Viṣṇu, the horse for Varuṇa, the bull for Indra, the ram for 
Tvasta and the he-goat for Agni. It is emphasised that he slaughtered them in 
the sacrifice. In the Agnicayana the sacrificer imitates this action of Praja-
pati and while doing so he makes a home for Agni, for whom these animals are 
conceived as food.¹

The paus are slaughtered according to their form and excellence.² 
Thus puṣa (man) is slaughtered first because he is the foremost of all animals.³ 
This idea goes back to the Puruṣasūkta of the R. V. where it is stated that puṣa 
is the first-born.⁴ There is also the provision for ropes (raśanā)⁵ which may be 
either all alike for all the paus or varying in length—the longest one for the 
man and in decreasing order, the shortest for the last, i.e. the he-goat. Unlike 
the texts of the Kṛṣṇa Yajurveda School, the Ś.B. makes no mention of making 
the heads medhya by treating it with the māsas and by placing it near the 
ant-heap.

Besides the orthodox and general practice of obtaining the five heads by 
actually sacrificing the five animals including man, the Ś. B. also notices certain 
variations in the practice but disapproves each of them. It refers to a practice 
of obtaining the heads in a manner different from that mentioned above, that is, 
without performing the animal sacrifice and slaughtering the victims.⁶ Sāyaṇa⁷ 
explains that it may be by buying, begging or other means referred to in the Kāt. 
Śr. The view of the Ś.B. is that these heads are unpropitiated and should not 
be used. It mentions one Āśādhī Sauṣromateya who was overtaken by death 
just after a sacrifice, in this manner, was performed for him.⁸ There was another 
practice of making gold heads and using them in the Agnicayana. This text

¹. आयतनेवैदन्यं करीति...सवत्ववायस्वर | Ś. B. VI. 2. 1. 14,15.
². यवपूर्वं यवाधेनमात्रं | Ś. B. VI. 2.1.18.
³. पुरुषं प्रथमात्रं। पुरुषं हि प्रथमः पलुताम | Ś. B. VI. 2.1.18.
⁴. पुरुषं जातमयः | R.V. X. 90. 7.
⁵. तेषां विषयं रक्षति: | स्य: | पुरुषं व्यवहारं हर्षत्स्यद्विगति हर्षत्स्यस्त्वारितः...सवास्वस्वि मान: | स्य:...सवो निपृतां 
अमवस्या हर्षता | Ś. B. VI. 2. 1. 19.
⁶. तद्वैः (कर) इत्येकतां पलुयोपाधिः विशेषाद्वयावनेत्रत पवित्र इति | Ś. B. VI. 2.1.37.
⁸. अनात्मतिः हि ताति तद तत्वात्मादेः: सर्वामनवयस्योपरिप: स हि धिमुखाय ततो ममार | Ś. B. VI. 2.1.37.
deprecates it by declaring that these are false īṣṭakās and no heads of victims. A third one was of using earthen heads which has also been disapproved. The Ś.B. lays down in an emphatic manner that the way to obtain these heads should be by actually slaughtering the five victims.

The Ś.B. further adds, in the same connection that at that time only two he-goats were slaughtered – one for Prajāpāti and another for Vāyu. Though it appears to be like an option for the sacrifice of the five victims, it may be an additional rite. In the T.S.B. also the sacrifice of an animal for Prajāpāti is an additional one performed to conclude the rite of the īṣṭakāpāsa, requiring compulsorily the sacrifice of five victims.

The Ś.B. appears to lay down an option when it states that the hornless bearded he-goat contains the forms of all the five animals and that by slaughtering this one, all the five ones are sacrificed. It is significant to notice that the Vaik. Śr., belonging to the Kṛṣṇa Yajurveda, also notices the alternative practice of obtaining only one head instead of five for this purpose.

The Kāṭ. Śr. lays down certain additional and optional practices which are not found in the Ś.B. The human victim required for the purpose of obtaining the head may be either a Vaiśya or a Rājanya. This we find in the Āp. Śr. also which belongs to the other school. There is also a provision in the Kāṭ. Śr. for putting ṭṛṇa in the throat of the five victims before they are slaughtered. It is to be noted that the puruṣa is to be slaughtered, according to this text, in an enclosure. Then follows the rite of prāṇāsodhana either of the he-goat only

1. हिरणयात्र, हैके कूक्तिति। (त्य) अमृतेष्टाः कृद्निन्तः वदनाभ्यास तदानुमृतेष्टाः क त्यापि। पदुश्चरित्ययति। (Weber and Eggeling, however, accept the reading ‘अनृतेष्टा’ in place of the second ‘अनृतेष्टा’). Ś.B. VI. 2.1. 38.
2. मृगावल्लय हैके कूक्तिति... तथा कूक्तिति। Ś.B. VI. 2.1. 39.
3. इत्यादि प्रत्य पूजनाभ्यास। Ś.B. VI. 2.1. 39.
4. अवैतात्तेष्टि इवेवाल्लये प्रजापतयु प्रायवाच। Ś.B. VI. 2.1.39.
5. प्राजापिकान्ति नायापिकातिः। T.S.B. V. 1. 8.
6. यजुर्वेद तौ द्वितीय तदादिवेदार्थस्य सवमौयाचलोच्च सवमौयाचलोच्च। Ś.B. VI. 2.2.15.
7. यजुर्वेद सवमौयाचलोच्च सवमौयाचलोच्च। Vaik. Śr. XXIX/XVIII. 6.
8. वैश्यः पुरुषो राजयो ता। Kāṭ. Śr. XVI. 17.
10. करुणम् तु गुणमत् यो शरीरस्यादति। Kāṭ. Śr. XVI. 18.
11. परिवृत्ते पुरुषसंस्काराय। Ibid, XVI. 14.
or of all. Then, evidently with a view to make them medhya, the heads are to be anointed with ghṛta either in complete form as they are or after removing skin, flesh and brain-matter from them.

After laying down rules for the normal practice of obtaining the heads by the sacrifice of the five victims, Kāṭ. Śr. also mentions the options in this respect, namely, the heads obtained by a method other than the actual sacrifice or gold models or terracotta imitations. It is significant to note that the Ś.B. notices these variations but does not recognise them as options.

In the Śāṅk. Śr., belonging to the R. V., we find reference to the five sacrificial victims - man, he-goat, ram, bull and horse. There is also an indication of the sacrifice of a hornless goat for Prajāpati or Vāyu as a substitute for the sacrifice of the five victims. Variations in this practice were followed by different Śākhās of the same school.

After removing the heads for the purposes of sacrifice, the trunks of the victims were thrown into water which was used for making the bricks. In the earlier texts of the Kuśaṇa Yajurveda, we do not find any specific mention of the practice of throwing the trunks into water. The Āp. Śr., which is a late production of the Taittiriya School, adopts this practice which evidently shows the influence of the other school.

After the sacrifice of the five victims, there follow a number of ceremonies leading to the preparation of the fire-pan and placing of fire in it. According

---

1. अजस्य श्रवणि प्रसन्नप्रयोगात्। सवर्गां शरावतस्वम्। Ibld, XVI. 15, 16.
2. तस्मिनन्दकोद्वाहि बुरष्कालस्तिनिरभासिनिदयानि। सकलानि वा। Ibld, XVI. 30, 31.
3. अवाहिनि वा हिरण्यायिनि वा मृगयायिनि वाकालद्वायात्। Ibld, XVI. 32.
3a. Ś.B. VI. 2. 1. 38, 39.
4. बुशोज्ज्वलिको गोरहर इति पहवे पत्थर। शानक. Śr. IX. 23. 4.
5. अजो वा तुपस। Ibld, IX. 23. 5.
7. कुमियायायामुखः प्रवचनाक्षरः। Ś.B. VI. 2.1.7. Saṣāṇa explains कुमियायामुखः as ‘मूढ़ग्रहितानि शरीराणि’ चर्चितममु कायाभासनम। Kāṭ. Śr. XVI. 19.
8. अप: कामक्यान्यमवहरत। Āp. Śr. XVI. 8.1.
to the Samhitās of the Kṛṣṇa Yajurveda, T.S. (Brāhmaṇa) and the Sūtras of the Taittirīya School, the first rite is the Savitā offering in which god Savitṛ is invoked to give inspiration for the sacrifice. In the Ś. B. and Kāṭ. Śr., belonging to the Sukla Yajurveda School, however, we find a minor variation in this procedure; here this rite is performed after getting the animals ready for bringing the clay and making the spade for digging it. The spade, according to the T.S.B., is made of reed; it is perforated and a fathom long. It is also pointed at both the ends and is of an undefined length. The Baud. Śr. provides for a gold spade also.

In the Āp. Śr., however, we find the provision for the spade of venu which may be sharp at both the ends. The size of the spade may be a prādeśa or vyāyāma (a fathom) or an aratni or of any length. In the Ś. B. we find provision for spade made of bamboo. It should be spotted and a span or a cubit (an arm's length) in length. It should be sharp on one side or on both sides. The Kāṭ. Śr. refers to the option of gold spade also. But the main provisions in this respect are almost the same as in the Ś. B. It should be of bamboo and should measure a prādeśa or an aratni. It is significant that in laying down the option of a gold spade we find an agreement between the Kāṭ. Śr. and Baud. Śr.

As regards the animals intended for the purpose of bringing the clay, we find the provision for two animals, a horse and an ass in the Samhitās, Brāhmaṇas and the Sūtras of the Kṛṣṇa Yajurveda. Though in the light of the

---

1. T. S. IV. 1. 1; K. S. XVIII. 19; M. S. III. 1. 1, 2. सतिवत्त्री युक्ति etc. T. S. B. V. 3. 1. देव सतिवत्त्री युक्ति युक्ति etc. Baud. Śr. X. 2. देवता लता सतिवत्त्री etc. Āp. Śr. XVI. 1. 7.
2. Ś. B. VI. 3. 2. 1 ff.; Kāṭ. Śr. XVI. 48, 49.
3. वेणी: सुषिरिन्द्र सुषिरिन्द्रित...उपत्त्वयोपतत्वं...व्रतमानश्च भवति।...असरित्वम्, श्रवणि, भवति।
5. हिरण्यप्रभासीव, Baud. Śr. X. 3.
6. वेणी कल्याणि सुपरुससुपरुसंिरं ओर्मः: कणूम्, Āp. Śr. XVI. 1. 7.
7. T. S. B. V. 3. 1. 31 ff.
8. हिरण्यप्रभासंिरं, Kāṭ. Śr. XVI. 49.
9. वेणी...प्रदेशमधुरुणस्य...प्रत्यूित्य वाजिन्द्रित विश्राधारनु...युज्ञायो रासम... अभिः सर्नसं मया। T. S. IV. 1. 2. Cf. K. S. XVI. 1; M. S. II. 7. 2.
10. प्रत्यूित्य वाजिन्द्रित...युज्ञायो रासम...युज्ञायो रासम...युज्ञायो रासम...युज्ञायो रासम... मया... T. S. B. V. 1. 2; K. S. B. XIX. 2; M. S. B. III. 1. 3.
11. इष्ठागृहीणश्यामान्तोस्यति तपस्या समिद्वारितता प्रत्यूित्य बाजिन्द्रितयोग्यं... तदास्तेसमिद्वारितता युज्ञायो रासम... Yuv.
S.B. and the commentary of Mahīdharā, Griffith\(^1\) opines that the address to Anāgiras in the V.S. implies the presence of a goat, it is to be noted that the horse and ass alone are mentioned specifically in this text and not the he-goat. This is obviously an innovation found in the S.B. In the Śukla Yajurveda School, as the evidence of Ś.B.\(^a\) and Kāṭ. Śr.\(^a\) shows, we find three animals, a horse, an ass and an āja (he-goat). South of the Āhavaniya, the animals are made to stand facing the cast in this order—first the horse, then the ass and the he-goat respectively.

In the Sūtras\(^4\) of the Taittiriya School we find that the animals are fastened with halters. The evidence of Baud. Śr.\(^5\) shows that the halter is either of kuśa or munjā.

The Kāṭ. Śr., however, refers to the three animals each tied with a pañcānga munjā.

A clay ball\(^6\) is placed in a rectangular pit in a front (to the east) of the Āhavaniya and then the ground is made even. Halfway between the Āhavaniya and the clay ball, he places the ant-hill clay. After the recitation of mantras and the Gārhapatya Agni being enkindled, the animals are taken to the lump of clay. The anaddhā puruṣa (the sham man) is to be seen. Then the ant-hill is taken and after seeing the clay ball through its hole, it is placed there. The horse is made to place its foot on the clay ball which is then marked with three lines with the spade and is dug up with it. Then krśṇājina (black antelope hide) is spread with a lotus leaf,\(^7\) on which the clay ball is placed.\(^8\) The corners of the black antelope skin are tied with a triyātā munjā\(^9\) and the bundle is placed on the animals with the recitation

\[\text{Footnotes:}\]
1. Baud. Śr. X. 2; Cf. Āp. Śr. XVI. 2. 1, 2; Vaik. Śr. XXIX/XVIII. 1; Sat. Śr. XI. 1. 12, 13.
2. Griffith, V.S. XI. 45, 47 fns.
3. अच्छ: प्रथमच रामोत्साह...। S. B. VI. 3. 1. 28.
4. आहवनीय दलानेन बिक्रुमुज्जाजः वाणी कटास्तातिनां प्रात्थौड़त्वमेदाशः। Baud. Śr. X. 1. See fn. 3 above.
5. Baud. Śr. X. 1; Kāṭ. Śr. XVI. 1. 21, 2.
6. Kāṭ. Śr. XVI. 45.
8. S.B. VI. 4.1.7; Kāṭ. Śr. XVI. 66-69.
9. S.B. VI. 4.1.9; Kāṭ. Śr. XVI. 75.
of mantras. 1 While bringing the clay, the he-goat is first, then the ass, and the horse is the last. The S.B. offers an explanation for this order. “Inasmuch as the ass does not go first, either in going from here or in coming back from there, therefore, the Brāhmaṇa and the Kṣatriya never go behind the Vaiśya or Śūdra; hence they walk in this order to avoid confusion between good and bad. And, moreover, he (the sacrificer) thus encloses those two castes (Vaiśya and Śūdra) on both sides by the priesthood and nobility and makes them submissive.” The sham man is seen again as before. 8 The lump of clay, brought by the animals, is placed in a fenced place situated to the north of the Āhavaniya fire, having its entrance towards the east, in a fenced place situated to the north of the Āhavaniya having its entrance towards the east.

The procedure has been described above mainly on the basis of the Kāt. Śr. where we find an elaborate account thereof. In the Śrauta Sūtras of the Kṛṣṇa Yajurveda School we notice certain variations, besides that which pertains to the number of animals required for the purpose of bringing the clay. According to Baudhāyana 6 and Āpastamba 8 , the horse should proceed first while going to take the clay. Here we find agreement between the two major Schools. But Āpastamba 7 lays down the option that the ass should also proceed first if the object is success in a sinful act and victory over enemies (abhiścāra). Evidently, Āpastamba has here in mind a practice mentioned in the T.S.B. (V. 1.2) which prescribes that the ass should proceed first in case the object is to injure enemies. The texts 8 of the Taittiriya School agree on the point that the clay

1. S.B. VI. 4.4.5; Kāt. Śr. XVI. 79.
2. S.B.E., vol. XLI, pt. III; VI. 4.4.13, p. 227. अत्र्यान्तरितत्वस्य प्राविधिक विभूतितरं च व्रजा व्यवः: पन्नवयितरं नाममृतात्माजल: प्रयविधितरं तत्स्य स्वस्त्यां च व्रजा: पन्नवयितरं नाममृतात्माजल: प्रयविधितरं तत्स्य स्वस्त्यां
3. Kāt. Śr. XVI. 82.
4. Ibid, XVI. 83.
5. अर्थानं च गदें च तोरण, Baud. Śr. X. 1.
6. Āp. Śr. XVI. 2.
7. यदि कामायते पापायस्य प्राप्तिः: । Āp. Śr. XVI. 2.4. Sāyana explains pāpāyasmin as पापायस्य वाच्यं वर्त्यं कर्ममेततात् पापायस्य, अत्वान्वितेन पापायस्य तत्त्वं वस्त्रान्तरितमित्वाः: । (T.S.B. V. 1.2, vol. III., p. 22, 23). Keith has translated पापायस्य (H.O.S., vol. 19, p. 392) as ‘confusion.’ He has evidently missed the explanation of Sāyana.
8. युवज्ञः रासम् । अर्थं भवन्तत्सम्: T.S. IV. 1.2. गदेम आत्मवान्ति हिसिर: भवः etc. Baud. Śr. X. 4.

---

1. S.B. VI. 4.4.5; Kāt. Śr. XVI. 79.
2. S.B.E., vol. XLI, pt. III; VI. 4.4.13, p. 227. अत्र्यान्तरितत्वस्य प्राविधिक विभूतितरं च व्रजा व्यवः: पन्नवयितरं नाममृतात्माजल: प्रयविधितरं तत्स्य स्वस्त्यां च व्रजा: पन्नवयितरं नाममृतात्माजल: प्रयविधितरं तत्स्य स्वस्त्यां
should be brought on the back of the ass only, as it is considered the carrier of Agni whereas in the procedure of the Śukla Yajurveda we find that all the animals are to be employed for this purpose. Then again, the Sūtras of the Taittiriya School further lay down that gold should be placed in the hoof of the horse at one stage while digging and taking the clay.

Making of the Ukhā (The Fire-Pan)

In the Taittiriya School the making of the fire-pan begins with the invocation to Agni and other deities like Mitra and Rudras. The various acts involved in this rite are with a view to winning support, healing and freedom from obstacles for the sacrificer. The invocation to Agni and other deities occurs in the V.S. also at the beginning of this rite.

According to the T.S.B. armakapāla (potsherds from an ancient deserted site), śarkarā (sand), ajaloma (goat-hair) and kṛṣṇājinaloma are to be mixed with the clay. In the Ś.B. of the Śukla School it has been stated that the water of palāśa should be used for working the clay as the palāśa tree symbolises firmness. The provision has been laid down for mixing with clay, goat-hair and three kinds of powder—sand of gravel, stone, and iron-rust. The Kāt. Śr., belonging to the same school, follows the details of the Ś.B.

In the Āp. Śr. of the Kṛṣṇa School we find greater detail regarding the materials to be mixed with clay which are armakapāla, bamboo-coal, rice-

---

1. Kāt. Śr. XVI. 79.
2. शिक्षणात्मकानिर्देशीय निर्देश, उत्तराढ्यानिर्देशीय निर्देश, Baud. Śr. X. 3. Cf. Āp. Śr. XVI. 2.11; Vaik. Śr. XXIX/XVIII. 1.
3. T.S.B. V. 1.6. (अष्टेशकाल्पः संसुखतानि इत्याधि).
4. V.S. XI. 49 ff.
5. चिरकाल्पमो भूमि अवस्थितानि पूर्वतत्त्वानि अर्थमितानि, केवलां प्रणितिः अवस्थानोऽधिकतत्वत... न तु मृत्यु-पकरणानि माणानि। Sāyana on T.S.B. IV. 1.6, p. 71.
6. वाक्यस्यापि अप्रवृत्तापि भवति... Ś. B. VI. 5. 1. 1. Sāyana explains ‘परत्यायितन्त्रवा’ as ‘पारस्परिकाल्पगिता।’
7. अष्टेशकाल्पमो: संसुक्तिः... अर्थातुत्त्वा विपर्ये भवति... कारकाभ्यासानिर्देशं संसुक्तिः...Ś. B. VI. 5.1.4, 6.
8. अवश्यानि... कारकाभ्यासानिर्देशं, Kāt. Śr. XVI. 87, 88.
9. अष्टेशकाल्प: पिंडः बल्द्विश्रेष्ठाहिः परायकाविषय शारचार्यः पिंडाभिः इत्यादिनित्वोभिरविविधिमिति, Āp. Śr. XVI. 4.1.
husk, (butea frondosa) palāśa-resin, sand, all powdered, along with krṣṇājina and ajaloma. Baudhāyana, however, gives fewer details than Āpastamba.

It is significant to notice that the Sūtras of the Taittirīya School, on the whole, give fuller details in this respect. The evidence shows that krṣṇājinaloma was exclusively used by the Krṣṇa Yajurveda and iron-rust by the Śukla Yajurveda School.

Then the goddess Sinīvāli, who is described as a beautiful maiden, having fair braids (sukapardā), fair head-dress (sukurīrā) and as fair-limbed (svaupaśā), is invoked to make the clay softer and initiate the preparation of the Ukhā by placing the clay in the hands of the Great Aditi.

Sāyana gives the following details regarding the shape of the Ukhā, on the basis of the T.S.B. He says that it should consist of three parts so as to look like three pots placed upon one another with a chord round the neck or the junction of the first and second part to represent symbolically the meeting of the three worlds and also to make them firm. In the Ś.B. this chord has been compared to the rajju or pāśa of Varuṇa and is made with the mantra V.S. XI. 59. There are four vertical bands representing the four quarters. The vertical and horizontal belts are chords intended to strengthen

---

1. अमकपालः: शर्करार्करवाद्यकंपणपिनामिरंज्ञकोऽये: क्रृष्णानिनयोऽमितय। Baud. Šr. X. 5; Vaik. Šr. XXIX/ XVIII. 1 closely follows Ap. Šr.
2. सिनिवाली मुक्तवर्णयुक्तस्वीपण। सा गुप्तमयमेव महो जीवलि रथातु हस्तमित। T.S. IV. 1.5. Cf. K.S. XVI. 4; M.S. II. 7.5; V.S. XVI. 56; Š.B. VI. 5.1.10; Baud. Šr. X. 5; Vaik. Šr. XXIX/XVIII. 1. 7. See also Sāyana on T.S. IV. 1.5, vol. III, pp. 72 ff.
3. भुजनं करंति वय इमे लोका etc. T.S.B. V. 1. 6.
4. यथा भाण्डव्यूँ उपरि अमकपालिः, तत्रव्यूँपुर्युपनयमाणितिः क्षत्रयथ, तत्यथमेकं उक्तं क्षत्रयमाणिः कायः (Sāyana on ibid); द्रवी द्रवी विधाताम् विधाताम्, Vaik. Šr. XXIX/XVIII. I.
5. अदिविस्यां राशीनि, T.S. IV. 1.4. राशिसाधुद्रिः भाण्डव्यूँ गलत्ति रेखा राशिः। हे रेखा त्वम् आदिविस् (सूक्तिरूपमाणिः उक्ता) 'राशिः' (क्रृष्णचक्षुश्चायता राशिः) 'अर्थैः', Sāyana on T.S. IV. 1.5; see also Š.B. VI. 5. 2. 11.
6. ओष्ठ ओष्ठा लोकानांचिता: सामाधित तद्वेकसांस्तु हित। Š.B. VI. 5. 2. 12.
7. श्रवण्या वै...राज्या...Ibid, VI. 5. 2. 13.
8. अष्ट भत्सर्दस्यः करंति। विषों हृद्य तां...Ibid, VI. 5. 2. 14.
the Ukhā. The Ukhā has been described as stanā. The Taittiriya School favours dvistāna evidently because the upper and lower parts simulate two breasts. Ukhās with four and eight nipples or breast-like parts are also well known. The Taittiriya School also mentions a Ukhā with nine corners for the purpose of abhicāra. But this type is unknown to the Śukla School.

According to the Ś.B., the Ukhā should be a span high and a span wide at the top. Sāyaṇa, commenting on T.S. (V.1.5), explains that it should measure one pṛādeśa (approximately 9 ins). Kātyāyana essentially follows the Ś.B. He further lays down that in case where five animals are sacrificed it should measure 5 pṛādeśas or 1 āyu (āyāma).

Āpastamba prescribes that the Ukhā should be either rectangular or round. It should be one span in height, one aratni in width and with a circumference of one vyāyāma. But it may also have different dimensions. Baudhāyana also follows the same line.

After considering the details given in the various texts, we notice that the standard type of Ukhā, known to the two major Schools, should be one pṛādeśa in length and one pṛādeśa in width and should consist of three parts, the two horizontal and one vertical with a cordon at the junction of the first and second.

The great significance attached to the Ukhā may be known from the fact

1. taḍaṭṭhaśadāśi bhadraitī. Tattvādi śāstraśाछा - Baudhāyana Śr. X. 5; Āpa. Śr. XVI. 4. 11.
5. tāṃ pradeśamāyānāt vacākcharī karoṣi. Pradeśamāya tiṣṭhāte, Śr. VI. 5. 2. 8.
6. pradeśamāya tīṣṭhāte ā. Kāṭ. Śr. XVI. 93.
7. pradeśamāya tīṣṭhāte ā. Kāṭ. Śr. XVI. 94.
8. pradeśamāya tīṣṭhāte ā. Pradeśamāya pradeśamāyaśāstraśāstraśāstraśāstraśāstraśāstraśāstraśāstraśāstraśāstraśāstraśāstraśāstraśāstraśāstraśāstraśāstraśāstraśāstraśāstraśāstraśāstraśāstraśāstraśāstraśāstraśāstraśāstraśāstraśāstraśāstraśाछा - Āpa. Śr. XVI. 4. 7. He also refers to the practice of the Vajasaneyins in respect of the Ukhā, in case five animals are sacrificed. Ibid, XVI. 4. 8.
9. pradeśamāya pradeśamāyaśāstraśāstraśāstraśāstraśāstraśāstraśāstraśāstraśāstraśāstraśāstraśāstraśāstraśाछा - Baudh. Śr. X. 5.
that it has been described as the head\(^1\) of the sacrifice in the texts. The Ś.B.\(^2\), however, describes it as the womb of Agni.

**The Aṣādhā**

In the Samhitās we find the same hymn\(^3\) addressed to the most significant brick called aṣādhā which has been conceived, in all the schools, as the symbol of victory over foes. Evidently this connotation of the aṣādhā was fixed before the Samhitās of the different Śākhās came into existence. The T.S.B.\(^4\) gives additional details. The term devalakṣṇam, used to describe the brick, shows that it was engraved with the characteristic mark of the sacrifice. The other term tryālkhītā, used in this connection, has been explained by Śāyana as tripūṇḍavadrekhā—three lines like the tripūṇḍa, the symbol of gods,\(^5\) by which gods defeat the asuras. The Śrauta Sūtras of Baudhāyana, Āpastamba and Vaikhānasa preserve this tradition faithfully.\(^6\) This brick was prepared by the sacrificer out of the same clay with which the Ukhā was prepared. The brick should be rectangular and tryālkhītā.\(^7\) According to the Ś.B. also, it should be tryālkhītā and should measure one pāda (pādamātri).\(^8\)

We find a notable difference between the practices of the two major Schools. In the School of the Śukla Yajurveda\(^9\) it is laid down that the brick should be prepared by the chief queen or chief wife of the sacrificer. According

---

1. Śr. VI. 5. 2. 21.
2. Śr. XVI. 4. 4 and Vaik. Śr. XXIX/XVIII. 1 for the mantra of the T. S.
3. Śr. XVI. 2. 9; K. S. XVI. 16; M. S. II. 7. 16; V. S. XIII. 26.
4. T. S. V. 2. 8.
5. Śr. XVI. 5. 12, 13; Vaik. Śr. XXIX/XVIII. 1.
6. Śr. XVI. 5. 9, XVI. 24. 12, 13; Vaik. Śr. XXIX/XVIII. 1.
7. Śr. XVI. 5. 4; Vaik. Śr. XXIX/XVIII. 1.
8. S. B. VI. 5. 3, 2-4. Śr. XVI.
9. S. B. VI. 5. 3, 1; Śr. XVI. 90.
to the other school, the *yajamāna* himself should prepare it. In the T.S.B. there is no direct reference to the maker of the Ukha. But in the Āp. Śr. and Vaik. Śr. the Ukha and the *aśūḍāḥ* both are prepared by the sacrificer.¹

The three *viśvajotis* bricks which are special ones, marked with three lines, are also prepared, according to the Ś.B.², by the sacrificer out of the same clay. Kātyāyana³ also preserves this tradition. But this method of making these bricks is confined to the Śukla School only.

*Fumigation of the Ukha and its Saṁskāra*

The procedure⁴ for fumigation and *saṁskāra* of the Ukha is mentioned in all the Śāhītaś, Brāhmaṇas and Śrauta Sūtras. Having dug a wide and spacious hole inside a shed⁵ or near the Gārhapatiya,⁶ the Ukha is placed upside down on sand.⁷ Seven balls of horse-dung⁸ or, according to the Baud. Śr.,⁹ 21 balls of horse-dung and sheep-dung are placed.

The Adhvaryu fumigates the kiln with the fire taken from the Dakṣiṇā or Gārhapatiya hearth.¹⁰ The horse-dung is used because of the equation of horse with Prajāpati and Agni.¹¹ The number seven in this connection is also significant. The Ukha is conceived as the head of the sacrifice and the head should have seven holes through which *prāṇa* may be infused.¹²

¹. Āp. Śr. XVI. 1.1, 2; Vaik. Śr. XXIX/XVIII. 1.
². Ś.B. VI. 5. 3. 5.
³. इत्यकायां तिस्ती विद्वद्वोतिः पूणयत्रामर्गं विलितीया; Kāṭ. Śr. XVI. 106.
⁴. T.S. IV. 1. 6; K.S. XVI. 5. 6; M.S. II. 7. 6; V.S. XI. 57, 65; T.S.B. V. 1. 7; Ś.B. VI. 5. 3. 8-11, VI. 5. 4. 1-17; Baud. Śr. X. 6; Āp. Śr. XVI. 5; Vaik. Śr. XXIX/XVIII. 1; Kāṭ. Śr. XVI. 111 ff.
⁵. शालामुखीश्विनिवर्त्त खातवति... Baud. Śr. X. 6.
⁶. अभ्रेष्ण गार्हस्थ्यमकष्ट्र खातवति... Āp. Śr. XVI. 5. 8.
⁷. Ś.B. VI. 5. 4. 3. 4.
⁸. स्तंभः...अस्वानकै गुप्तुति T.S. B.V. 1. 7; Ś.B. VI. 5. 3. 9; Āp. Śr. XVI. 5. 6; Kāṭ. Śr. XVI. 108 ff.
⁹. एकजित्वाति वृषो अस्ववस्थ शाक्तिर्भ्रान...आदीप्य... Baud. Śr. X. 6.

Sheep (वृषण) is mentioned in this connection in the Āp. Śr. (XVI. 5. 6) and Vaik. Śr. (XXIX/XVIII. 1) also. The former regards this practice as belonging to another sub-school.

¹⁰. Āp. Śr. XVI. 5. 7; Kāṭ. Śr. XIV. 112.
¹¹. T.S.B. V. 1. 7; Ś.B. VI. 5. 3. 9.
¹². T.S.B. V. 1. 7.
The hole is dug with an invocation to Aditi to avoid injury to earth. The Ukhhä is placed in it in an inverted position\(^1\) with one invocation to the wives of gods, as they are supposed to have fashioned it in times of yore. In course of fumigation, invocations are made to gods like Mitra and Vasu. The Ukhhä is then cleansed of the ashes with an invocation to Savitṛ. Goat's milk is then poured into it\(^2\) in order to avoid injury to it. The goat's milk is chosen because goat has sprung from the head of Prajāpati or Agni and Agni would not injure its own self. Another explanation is that, as the goat eats all kind of herbs, its milk is efficacious.

The Ukhhä and the asādhā are baked in the same pit.\(^3\) According to the Ś.B., the visvajyotis bricks are also baked along with them.\(^4\)

Incidentally, it is to be noticed that the literary evidence throws light on the practice of inverted firing.\(^5\)

**The Making of the Bricks**

In the Kāt. Śr. we find the rules regarding the preparation of other bricks after the making of the Ukhhä and the three visvajyotis bricks and certain other ceremonies like fumigation of the Ukhhä. The bricks of the first, third and fifth layers are marked with three lines and those of the remaining ones, i.e. second and fourth, with unlimited lines.\(^6\) Then they are baked.\(^7\)

Āpastamba\(^8\) lays down that after the dikṣā the sacrificer performs the ceremony of making the bricks which are pādamātrī, arativātī, urvāsthitāmati and anukamātrī. They are marked with three lines and are so baked as to become reddish. They should not be broken, black or spotted.

---

1. Infra, fin. 5.
2. T.S.B. V. 1.7; Ś.B. VI. 5. 4. 1 ff.
3. T.S. IV. 1. 6; T.S.B. V. 1. 7.
4. Ś.B. VI. 5. 4. 4, 8, 9.
5. अथोऽस्मावद्यन्ती (अवाक्षम्यतावद्यन्ती - Śāyana) Ś.B. VI. 5. 4. 4.
6. इहत्तक्षितायास्माचारिन्तः कात्यायनि. Kāt. Śr. XVI. 124. अपरिवर्धितायास्माचारिन्तः Kāt. Śr. XVI. 125.
7. पूज्वद्वनाति पाकेः | Ibid, XVI. 126.
8. श्रीसिद्धेश्वरः करति... | Ibid. XVI. 13.5... | पद्माश्विनितालिमाश्वि
Vaikhānasa\textsuperscript{1} refers to caturasrā bricks and Satyāśādha\textsuperscript{2}, to both caturasrā and maṇḍaleśṭakā. Other details are the same as in the Āp. Šr.

According to the Š.B.,\textsuperscript{3} 10800 bricks are required for all the five layers. The evidence of Kātyāyana,\textsuperscript{4} however, shows that the number of lokalpṛṇā (space filler) bricks is not fixed and, as such, the total number of bricks may vary.

**Agni-Upādhāna and Agnidhāraṇa**

After the fumigation and the saṃskāra of the Ukhā follow the rites of Agni-Upādhāna including the taking of the Ukhā to the cāyanadeśa (area of the fire altar). All these rites are performed with a view to place the fire into the firepan. These rites, in their essential form, have been prescribed in the Saṁhitās.\textsuperscript{5}

In the Brāhmaṇas we find further elaborations. The T.S.B. prescribes the dikṣā or the initiation or consecration ceremony with six mantras\textsuperscript{6} identified with six seasons. It is further stated that the consecration takes place with seven mantras for the metres are seven.\textsuperscript{7} Sāyaṇa explains that this rite should be performed with a homa.\textsuperscript{8}

In the Š.B. and Kāt. Šr.\textsuperscript{9} there is provision for dikṣā more than once. The initiation starts on the day of the new moon,\textsuperscript{10} i.e. a week after the making of the Ukhā. It starts with the offering of an animal cake (Paśupuroḍāśa) to Vaiśvānara on twelve pot-sherds\textsuperscript{11} and imposes upon the sacrificer a particular discipline that he must not sleep upon a couch nor eat flesh nor do sexual intercourse.\textsuperscript{12} According to the Š.B., this is the first dikṣā but it is not a dikṣā.

---

1. Vaik. Šr. XXIX/XVIII. 11.
2. Sat. Šr. XI. 5. 18.
4. आपरिचितकृ त्रादि Kāt. Šr. XVII. 162.
5. T.S. IV. 1. 9,10; IV. 2. 2,3; K.S. XVI. 7. 10, 19; M.S. II. 7. 8,10; V.S. XI. 66-82; XII. 1-29; XII. 31-43.
6. प्राचीनदिविषयति, T.S.B. V. 1. 9.
7. सत्याशादिविषयति सत सन्नाति, T.S.B. V. 1. 9; K. S. B. XIX. 10; M. S. B. III. 1. 9
8. हीणं देशविषयं संस्कारे etc. (Sāyaṇa on T.S. IV. 1. 9).
9. Š.B. VI. 6. 1. 1; Kāt. Šr. XVI. 127.
10. Š.B. VI. 2. 2. 26; Kāt. Šr. XVI. 127.
11. Š.B. VI. 2. 1. 33; Kāt. Šr. XVI. 128.
12. Š.B. VI. 2. 2. 39.
in the regular sense because the sacrificer does not possess a girdle or black antelope hide. Of that animal he should offer no *samiṣṭayajus*. The real *dikṣā* is discussed in the Ś. B. (VI. 6) afterwards. It consists of a triple offering, a cake to Agni-Viṣṇu on 11 sherds, one to Vaiśvānara on 12 pot-sherds and a pap for the Ādityas.

Kātyāyana closely follows the Ś. B. and mentions the first *dikṣā* consisting of a Paśupuroḍāśa to Vaiśvānara. But he permits meat eating and sleeping on a couch, under certain special circumstances.

Among the Sūtras of the Taittirīya School, Baudhāyana mentions only one *dikṣā* consisting of the triple offering to Agni-Viṣṇu, Vaiśvānara and Aditi with the six mantras of the T.S. Āpastamba and Vaikāṅsaka, both of whom allude to the practice of the Vājasaneyins, show strong influence of this School. Like the Vājasaneyins, they prescribe the first or the preparatory one consisting of the Paśupuroḍāśa to Vaiśvānara and the second or the real one consisting of the triple offering. They also mention that the Ukhā is to be filled for one year and the *dikṣā* is to be performed on the 3rd, 6th or 12th day.

In the Śāṅk. Śr. we only find the second *dikṣā*. In certain cases, a fourth oblation to Aditi and a fifth to Sarasvatī or guests (Atithi) are also to be offered.

The Vaiśvānara cake is a peculiar feature of the *dikṣā* of the Agnicayana only and is conspicuous by its absence in other Soma sacrifices.

---

1. Ibid.
2. Ś. B. VI. 2. 2. 38.
3. Ś.B. VI. 2. 1. 35-36. Eggeling in his note has evidently confused this *dikṣā* with the first one and has overlooked the word पूण्य in the first. S.B.E, vol. XLI, pt. III, p. 247.

4. Sāyaṇa, however, explains the word ‘pūrvadikṣā’ as प्रचार्यविकृती ‘दः’ दैर्यांप्रथमाधि सत्यमेव प्रति तथा पूण्यस्ताद्रुतमपि, i.e. the commencement or the preliminary of *dikṣā* (on Ś.B. VI. 2. 2. 39).
7. Baud. Śr. X. 12.
8. Āp. Śr. XVI. 8, 7, 8, 9; Vaik. Śr. XXIX/XVIII. 5, 6.
10. For the offering of the Vaiśvānara cake, see also Baud. Śr. X. 12; Āp. Śr. XVI. 8, 12; Vaik. Śr. XXIX/XVIII. 6.
The kindling of the fire in the pan requires muñjā and the special Samidha which has been described as Kārmuki (of Kramuka), vaikañhakati, audumbari, sāmimayi, pālāsi and asvatthi etc. The kindling sticks are not to be cut by an axe. Āpastamba and Vaikhānasa prescribe the samidha of Tilvaka in connection with abhicāra. It is significant to notice that the wood of Tilvaka is used in building the Tūpas in the Śyenayāga which is an Abhicāra rite.

If by chance, the fire-pan breaks, there is a provision for Prāyaścitta involving its restoration by the same-sherds.

The fire is maintained in the Ukhā. A golden round plate (Rukma) sewn into the dark white hair of an antelope skin is worn by the sacrificer round the neck so that it hangs up to the navel. According to the T.S.B., the gold represents brilliance and the Kiṣṇājna priestly glory. The Ukhā with Agni is carried on a specially prepared seat (Āsandi), one span high, one cubit—arm’s length wide and provided with feet and board which are four-cornered, by means of a netting (Sikya). The sacrificer is required to carry about the Agni every day for a period of one year after the initiation, if he desires to derive the full benefit of the initiation ceremony. During that period he is required to perform every morning the rite of Viṣṇukrama and Vātsapra.

The Ś.B. lays down that only for one half of the year he performs the Viṣṇu-strides, and for the other half he worships the fire with the Vātsapra. After Vātsapra we find the Muṣṭikaraṇa ceremony in the Āp.Śr. with prayers for the protection, preservation and strength of the Ukhā.

The T.S.B. and the Ś.B. give details regarding the driving about of the

---

1. T.S.B V. 1.9; Ś.B. VI. 3. 6, 7; Baud. Śr. X. 12; Āp. Śr. XVI. 10; Vaik. Śr. XXIX/ XVIII. 12; Kāt. Śr. XVI. 135-137.
2. तैवकामिब्बस्तः। Āp. Śr. XVI. 10. 2; Vaik. Śr. XXIX/XVIII. 7.
3. T.S.B. V. 1.10; Ap. Śr. XIV. 10.4. 5.
4. Ś.B. VI. 7.1 ff; Kāt. Śr. XVI. 146.
5. T.S.B. V. 1.10.
6. Ś.B. VI. 7.1. 12 ff; Kāt. Śr. XVI. 147.
7. Ś.B. VI. 7.1. 19.
8. वातस्त्रेणोपसित्वः। पुरुषविविष्कुमाल्लामः। Āp. Śr. XVI. 11.6.7; Cf Kāt. Śr. XVI. 15.6.
9. Ś.B. VI. 7.4. 11.
10. Āp. Śr. XVI. 11. 10 ff.
Ukhya-Agni in a chariot, whose creaking is to be avoided as it is considered demoniacal. 1 Kathāyana 2 includes the driving about of the Agni in the Vanirvāhana ceremony. The ashes from the Ukhā are thrown either into water or elsewhere. 3

The Building of the Gārhapatya Hearth

The building of the Gārhapatya has been prescribed at this stage by the Sāmhitās (Brāhmaṇas) 4 and the Śrauta Śūtras 5 of the Kṛṣṇa Yajurveda School as also the Ś.B. 6 and the Kāt.Śr. 7 belonging to the Sukla Yajurveda. The essential elements of the rites are the same in both the Schools.

According to the T.S. 8, a prayer to Yama is first addressed for asking from him a place for the sacrifice. In the Sukla Yajurveda School 9, however, we find the additional details concerning the sweeping of the ground with palāśa branch, which has been incorporated later on in the Āp.Śr. and Vaik.Śr. belonging to the Kṛṣṇa Yajurveda. 10 But in them we also find the option of samś branch for the palāśa branch.

Then there is a provision for spreading sand and saline soil on the site of the Gārhapatya in the T.S.B. 11 In the Āp.Śr. and Vaik.Śr. of this School, and also in the Ś.B. and Kāt. Śr. of the other school, there is a provision for spreading 21 stones round the site. The Ś.B., however, does not specify the number. 12

As regards the size of the Gārhapatya, we do not find any mention in the T.S.B. But in the Ś.B. and also in the Śūtras of the Kṛṣṇa School we find

1. T.S.B. V. 2. 2; Ś.B. VI. 8. 1
2. बन्धुवाहनमेंतद्रोहाम् यदिश्चेत् । Kāt. Śr. XVI. 191.
3. Ibid, XVI. 192, 193.
4. T.S.B. V. 2. 3; K.S.B. XX. I; M.S.B. III. 2. 3.
5. Baud. Śr. X. 19; Āp. Śr. XVII. 14, 15; Vaik. Śr. XXIX/XVIII. 12.
6. Ś.B. VII. 1,12.
7. Kāt. Śr. XVII. 3.
8. T.S. IV. 2. 4; T.S.B. V. 2. 3.
9. गाहिष्ठं श्रेष्ठबलायाहस्य व्यूहानिति। Ś.B. VII. 1. 1. 1; Kāt. Śr. XVII. 3.
10. पलाशीवाय श्रीमायाब्रह्माय व... Āp. Śr. XVI. 14, 1; Vaik. Śr. XXIX/XVIII. 12.
11. सिध्दान्त नेन वर्ण्यते अवश्यवर्ण्यति T.S.B. V. 2. 3.
12. Ś.B. VII. 1. 16-13; Āp. Śr. XVI. 14. 1-4; Vaik. Śr. XXIX/XVIII. 12; Kāt. Śr. XVII. 6, 7.
details about its shape and size also. The Ś.B. and the Kāt. Śr. lay down that it should be circular. It should measure one fathom in diameter. The Āp.Śr. and Vaik.Śr. also prescribe the same shape but in the former, there is the option of rectangular shape also. According to these two texts, it should measure one vyāyama.

All the texts agree that there should be 21 bricks in the Gārhapatyā hearth; 4 bricks are laid down in the middle, 2 in front, 2 behind and 13 lokam-prnās in the remaining space. Kātyāyana, however, prescribes that the four bricks in the middle should be bhrafīs and the other 4 bricks (2 in front and 2 behind) should be ardhabhrafīs. According to the Ś.B. and Kāt. Śr., these four bricks should be laid tiraścis (running crosswise from north to south). Āpastamba provides the option of laying them samici (running in one direction) also. Vaikhānasa mentions only samici. All these bricks are laid down with mantras and are made firm by mortar.

In the T.S.B., the Āp.Śr. and the Vaik. Śr., it is laid down that he, who piles the Gārhapatyā for the first time, should build up in five layers, one who piles for the second time, in three layers, and one who piles for the third time, in one layer only.

But the Ś. B. favours the building of the Gārhapatyā only in one layer and disapproves the practice of building it in three layers. Kātyāyana follows the Ś.B. but at the same time he makes the building of Gārhapatyā citī in three layers optional. Thus, we find that the texts of the Sukla Yajurveda

1. Ś.B. VII. 1. 1. 12; (मण्डलं छातयति) Kāt. Śr. XVII. 5.
2. Infra, fns. 3, 4.
3. Āp. Śr. XVI. 14. 1; Vaik. Śr. XXIX/XVIII. 12.
4. चनुर्लं परिमण्डलं च। Āp. Śr. XVI. 14. 1.
5. गार्हपत्यासिद्धिस्यति व्यायमात्रम्। Āp. Śr. XVI. 14. 1; Vaik, Śr. XXIX/XVIII. 12.
8. Ś.B. VII. 1. 1. 18; Kāt. Śr. XVII. 8.
10. Vaik. Śr. XXIX/XVIII. 12.
11. T.S.B. V. 2. 3.
12. T.S.B. V. 2. 3; Āp. Śr. XVI. 15. 1-4; Vaik. Śr. XXIX/XVIII. 12.
13. Ś.B. VII. 1. 2. 15.
14. Ibid.
15. Kāt. Śr. XVII. 22.
School generally preferred the practice of building the Gārhapatya hearth in one layer only.

On the completion of the Gārhapatya, a prayer is recited, according to the T.S.B.\(^1\), for uniting the Agni that was before and that which is in the fire-pan. This symbolises the unity of the kingly power and the priestly power which are afterwards separated.

There are fuller details in the Ś.B.\(^2\) of the rites performed on the completion of the Gārhapatya. The Ukhyāgni is put into the Gārhapatya with the mantras (V. S. XII. 57-60). The Ukha is filled with sand which represents Vaiśvānara and is removed from the netting. Milk is then poured into it so that the human head may be placed into it later, and then it is heated.

Next comes the rite of placing, in a self-made cleft or hole, three black Nirṛti\(^3\) bricks dried by rice-husk fire in the quarter of Nirṛti (south) after going away from the actual place of the sacrifice. This rite symbolises the driving out of the evil. On this occasion no Sūdadohas are recited. The sacrificer throws away the nettings, the sling of the gold plate, the seat and the two pads and on return, he worships the fire.\(^4\)

**Preparation of the Ground for the Fire Altar**

The preparation of the ground for the fire altar has been prescribed in all the texts. The sacrificial ground is demarcated by stones.\(^5\) And then oxen are yoked to plough the ground. The plough is made of udumbera wood. We find a general agreement among the texts\(^6\) that the number of oxen should be six or twelve, but the Ś.B., Kāt. Śr. and Āp. Śr. also give the option of 24.\(^7\)

---

1. T.S.B. V. 2. 4.
2. Ś.B. VII. 1. 1. 38, 41, 44.
3. T.S.B. V. 2. 4; Ś.B. VII. 2. 1. 1 ff. Baud. Śr. X. 19; Āp. Śr. XVI. 16; Vaik. Śr. XXIX/X VIII. 14; Kāt. Śr. XVII. 23.
4. Ś.B. VII. 2. 1. 15; Āp. Śr. XVI. 15; Vaik. Śr. XXIX/XVIII. 14.
5. Ś.B. VII. 2. 1. 18.
6. Ś.B. VII. 2. 2. 9.
7. T.S., IV. 2. 5; K.S., XVI. 11-13; XIX. 3.4; M.S. III. 2.5; Kap.S. XXXII. 5,5; T.S.B. V. 2. 5,6; K.S.B. XX. 2,3; Ś.B. VII. 2. 2. 2 ff; Baud. Śr. X. 24 ff; Āp. Śr. XVI. 18-19; Vaik. Śr. XXIX/XVIII. 15; Kāt. Śr. XVII. 31 ff.
8. चन्दनवालिस्व वा। Ś.B. VII. 2. 2. 6; Kāt. Śr. XVII. 33; Āp. Śr. XVI. 18. 5.
Here it is obvious that the Āp. Śr., belonging to the Taittirīya School, has adopted the practice of the Śukla Yajurveda School. The cordage of the plough, according to the Ś.B. and Kāt. Śr., consists of muniya grass triply twisted.¹

In the Āp. Śr. and Vaik. Śr. it is prescribed that a pit should be dug and filled with water for the oxen to drink.² According to the Ś.B. and the Kāt. Śr., only the body of the altar should be ploughed³. On the other hand, the Sūtras⁴ of the Kṛṣṇa Yajurveda School require the ploughing of other parts of the ground also.

The Ś.B. lays down that after ploughing the ground, a bunch of darbha grass is placed in the middle of the fire altar, and offering of ghee is made and jarfuls of water are poured on the ploughed ground with an udumbara jar. The Kāt. Śr. closely follows the Ś.B. In the T.S.B., however, we find no mention of watering the ground at this stage. Baudhāyana who belongs to that school does not prescribe this. But a Sūtra⁵ in the Āp. Śr. and Vaik. Śr. suggests that this practice was adopted by the Kṛṣṇa Yajurveda School as well.

Then various kinds of herbs and seeds are sown. The Ś.B.⁶ associates these herbs with Soma. In the T.S.⁷ the oṣadhis are described as somavati and somarajñī and there is a dialogue between them and their king Soma. This text⁸ further lays down that seeds of seven domestic and seven wild plants should be sown. Āpastamba⁹ gives a detailed list of these herbs. The seven domestic plants are tila, māśa, vṛihī, yava, priyaṅgu, anu and godhūma. The seven wild ones are neva, śāmakā, nivāra, jartila, gavēdhuka, markaṭaka and gārmuta or kulatlha. After this, the Ś.B.¹⁰ prescribes the buying of Soma which is

1. mṛṣṭुप्रक्षः परिचितं निद्रुक्तस्योऽवन्तु। Ś.B. VII. 2. 2. 3; Kāt. Śr. XVII. 32.
2. निद्रुक्तस्यप्रतियोगस्मिन्। Ś.B. XVI. 18, 2, 3; Vaik. Śr. XXIX/XVIII. 15.
3. Ś.B. VII. 2. 2. 8; आतमनि कृष्टि। Kāt. Śr. XVII. 35.
4. स पुष्चालविश्वस्य जतापुष्चालविश्वस्य। Ś.B. XVI. 25; वृद्धिकृत्वा विश्वस्य। Ś.B. XVI. 19. 4; Vaik. Śr. XXIX/XVIII. 16.
5. पन्नवतीप्रक्षः पल्लविनयमिति। Ś.B. XVI. 19.10; Vaik. Śr. XXIX/XVIII. 16.
6. नग्नपल्लविनयमिति। Ś.B. VII. 2. 4. 26.
8. Ibid.
10. Ś.B. VII. 3. 1. 2-4.
intended to interlink the Soma sacrifice with the performance of the fire ceremonies. In the T.S.¹, as already noticed, the ēsādhis are described as somavatī and somarājānī but there is no specific mention of the Soma. Then sand² is scattered on the Gārhapatya and the Āhavanīya. The T.S.B.³ prescribes the spreading of gravel (śarkārā). Āpastamba⁴ lays down that sand should be scattered on the area of the Āhavanīya and this area should be enclosed by śarkārā. Then clod-bricks⁵, known as yajuṣmatī, are taken from outside the Vedi.

The Uttaraävedi

A square mound or the Uttaraävedi, measuring a yuga (86 aṅgulas, 7 ft. Indian or 5.25 ft. English) or 40 ft. (Indian) on each side, is thrown up in the middle of the body. The clod-bricks are placed in the mound of the Uttaraävedi. Then sand, representing seeds, is spread on it, which symbolises womb. Afterwards, the whole body is covered with white sand, which is unnumbered and unlimited. Thus, the whole body is made level with the Uttaraävedi. But this sand is not spread on the area of the wings and the tail. After levelling the sand, a horse or an ox is led about the altar⁶ which is to be mounted from the middle of the body.⁷ After this starts the building of the first layer.

The First Layer

The first layer contains a lotus-leaf⁸ in the centre of the body of the altar,

¹ Supra, p. 160.
² अनैव तत्ततानि ब्रह्म इति सिक्ता निरम्यति... T. S. B. V. 2. 6.
³ शर्करास्कर्मिक निर्मित्त, T. S. B. V. 2. 6.
⁴ शर्करामिर्निवैमत्तिकरातद्वारं परिश्राक्षितम् etc. Āp. Śr. XVI. 20. 9.
⁵ Ś. B. VII. 3. 1. 3, 14.
⁶ Ś. B. VII. 3. 1. 27, 28; S. B. E. Vol. XLIII; pt. IV, p. 1. in.; Kāt. Śr. XVII. 71.
⁷ also T. S. IV. 2. 7; K. S. XVI. 14; M. S. II. 7. 14; V. S. XII. 102-113; XIII. 3-21; T. S. B.; V. 2. 5; Āp. Śr. XVI. 20. 8; Vaik. Śr. XXIX/XVIII. 16; Sat. Śr. XI. 7. 54.
⁸ Ś. B. VII. 2. 2. 17.
with a gold plate\(^1\) upon it and a gold man\(^2\) on the latter. There are two ladles\(^3\), one of kārṣārhyā placed in the south and the other of udāmbara in the north. The swāyāmntī\(^4\) (naturally perforated brick) lies close to the gold man, with dūrēvāṭā or fresh green dūrē\(^5\) grass placed upon it. After placing a number of special bricks, the most important brick āsūḍhā\(^6\) is placed and then a kūrma\(^7\) (tortoise), ulākhala-musala\(^8\) (mortar and pestle), the Ukā\(^9\) and the victim’s heads\(^10\) respectively. Then a number of other bricks\(^11\) are spread on the first layer. And finally the whole body of the altar is covered with pūriṣa and sand.\(^12\)

On examining the list of bricks, some striking features revealing the gradual evolution and growing complexity of this ritual present themselves to us. This

---

1. T. S. IV. 2.8; V. S. XIII. 3; T. S. B. V. 2.7.1; K. S. B. XX. 5; M. S. B. III. 2.6; Š. B. VII. 4.1.10; Baud. Śr. X. 30; Āp. Śr. XVI. 22.3; Vaik. Śr. XXIX/XVIII. 17; Sat. Śr. XI. 7.20; Kāṭ. Śr. XVII. 74.
2. T. S. IV. 2.8; V. S. XIII. 4; T. S. B. V. 2.7.2; K. S. B. XX. 5; M. S. B. III. 2.6; Š. B. VII. 4.1.15; Baud. Śr. X. 30; Āp. Śr. XVI. 22.3; Vaik. Śr. XXIX/XVIII. 17; Sat. Śr. XI. 7.21; Kāṭ. Śr. XVII. 75.
3. T. S. IV. 2.8; V. S. XIII. 14; T. S. P. V. 2.7.3; K. S. B. XX. 5; M. S. B. III. 2.6; Š. B. VII. 4.1.37; Baud. Śr. X. 30; Āp. Śr. XVI. 22.4.5; Vaik. Śr. XXIX/XVIII. 17; Sat. Śr. XI. 7.24; Kāṭ. Śr. XVII. 83-86.
4. T. S. IV. 2.9; V. S. XIII. 16; T. S. P. V. 2.8.1; K. S. P. XX. 6; M. S. B. III. 2.6; Š. B. VII. 4.2.1; Baud. Śr. X. 31; Āp. Śr. XVI. 23.1; Vaik. Śr. XXIX/XVIII. 17; Sat. Śr. XI. 7.28; Kāṭ. Śr. XVII. 87.
5. T. S. IV. 2.9; V. S. XIII. 20; T. S. B. V. 2.8.3; K. S. B. XX. 6; M. S. B. III. 2.6; Š. B. VII. 4.2.11; Baud. Śr. X. 32; Āp. Śr. XVI. 24.1; Vaik. Śr. XXIX/XVIII. 17; Sat. Śr. XI. 7.32; Kāṭ. Śr. XVII. 90.
6. T. S. IV. 2.9; K. S. B. XV. 16; M. S. II. 7.16; V. S. XIII. 26; T. S. B. V. 2.8.3; K. S. B. XX. 6; M. S. B. III. 2.7; Š. B. VIII. 4.2.32 ff; Baud. Śr. X. 32; Āp. Śr. XVI. 24.12; Vaik. Śr. XXIX/XVIII. 17; Sat. Śr. XI. 7.40; Kāṭ. Śr. XVII. 100.
7. T. S. IV. 2.9; V. S. XIII. 27; T. S. B. V. 2.8.5; K. S. B. XX. 7; M. S. B. III. 2.7; Š. B. VII. 5.1.1 ff; Baud. Śr. X. 33; Āp. Śr. XVI. 25.1; Vaik. Śr. XXIX/XVIII. 17; Sat. Śr. XI. 7.41.42; Kāṭ. Śr. XVII. 99.
8. T. S. IV. 2.9; V. S. XIII. 33; T. S. B. V. 2.8; K. S. B. XX. 7; M. S. B. III. 2.7; Š. B. VII. 5.1.12; Baud. Śr. X. 33; Āp. Śr. XVI. 26.1; Vaik. Śr. XXIX/XVIII. 18; Sat. Śr. XI. 7.44; Kāṭ. Śr. XVII. 102.
9. T. S. IV. 2.9; V. S. XIII. 34; T. S. B. V. 2.9.1; K. S. B. XX. 7; M. S. B. III. 2.7; Š. B. VII. 5.1.35; Baud. Śr. X. 33; Āp. Śr. XVI. 26.8; Vaik. Śr. XXIX/XVIII. 19; Sat. Śr. XI. 7.48 ff; Kāṭ. Śr. XVII. 103.

12. पुरुषाग्रहणः ... विज्ञानमुद्धिताः। Āp. Śr. XVI. 34.6. भव्ये पुरुषम् निविष्ठति पूर्ववर्त्तः। पूर्ववर्त्तानां छादयति। प्रद्विशिष्मात्तमानः। Kāṭ. Śr. XVII. 131-133.
is clearly visible in the Kṛṣṇa Yajurveda School. The *mantras* of the T.S.¹, in this context, are associated with 7 bricks—svayamāṭṭhā, dūrveṣṭakā, aṣāḍhā, retaḥṣīk, apasyā, prāṇabhrī and apāṇabhrī. The T.S.B.² mentions 7 bricks—svayamāṭṭhā, dūrveṣṭakā, aṣāḍhā (tryālīkhita), apasyā (sānyata), prāṇabhrī, apāṇabhrī and chandasyā. But here we find chandasyā in place of retaḥṣīk; however, there is no direct reference to retaḥṣīk. The K.S.B³ raises this number to 9 by adding dviyajus and rtavā. The M.S.B⁴ adds two more names to this list—viśvajyotis and lokamṛṇa. The Baud. Śr⁵, by adding hiranyeṣṭakā, maṇḍaleṣṭakā, virāja, sāyuja and sānyūni, raises the number to 16. The Vaik. Śr⁶ omits rtavā and chandasyā from the list of Āp. Śr. but adds apāṇabhrī.

The order of bricks often differs in the Kṛṣṇa School. For instance, the dviyajus is mentioned just before aṣāḍhā in the M.S.B. but before retaḥṣīk in K.S.B. Similarly, rtavā is mentioned after aṣāḍhā in Baudhāyana but before it in Āpastamba.⁷

The texts of the Śukla Yajurveda School show uniformity in the number, names and order of bricks. The V.S⁸ reveals 10 names of bricks—svayamāṭṭhā, dūrveṣṭakā, dviyajus, retaḥṣīk, viśvajyotis, rtavā, aṣāḍhā, apasyā, chandasyā and prāṇabhrī. The Ś.B. and the Kāṭ. Śr. adopt this very order and add lokamṛṇa⁹ which occurs for the first time in the M.S. of the Kṛṣṇa School from which it appears to have been borrowed. Kātyāyana, however, includes the chandasyās in the apasyās but this is a minor difference.¹⁰

**Common Bricks of the Two Schools, their Numbers and Placing**

The common bricks¹¹ of the two schools are svayamāṭṭhā, dūrveṣṭakā, aṣāḍhā,

---

1. T.S. IV. 2.9; IV. 3.1—3.
2. T.S.B. V. 2.8.1, 3; V. 2.10.1, 2, 6.
5. Baud. Śr. X. 30—36.
7. Supra, p. 162.
8. V.S. XIII. 2, 3, 4, 14, 16, 20, 24, 26, 27, 33, 34, 53.
9. Ś.B.VII. 4.1 7, 10, 11, 15, 37; VII. 5. 1. 12, 35; VII. 5. 2.40, 41; VIII. 1.1.1, 2; VIII. 1.4. 11.
10. Kāṭ. Śr. XVII. 73, 74, 75, 87, 90, 100, 102, 103, 127.
prāṇabhr, apasyā and retahsik. The svayamāṭṛṇā was the central brick of the body. The aśādhā was placed after some bricks in front (to the east) of the central brick. The position of retahsik is not fixed. According to the Šukla School, it was placed after the dvijājus and before the viśvajyotis, ṛtasyā and aśādhā. In the K.S.B. and also in the Sūtras of the Kṛṣṇa Yajurveda, there is no uniformity regarding its placing. However, it was placed at some stage before the placing of the cśādhā. But the M.S.B. of the Kṛṣṇa School offers an exception. Here the retahsik has been mentioned after the aśādhā. The evidence of the T.S.B., Baud. Śr., Ś.B. and Kāt. Śr. reveals that in both the schools out of 50 prāṇabhr bricks four sets of ten bricks each are placed on the four diagonals of the body and the fifth set is laid down round the svayamāṭṛṇā. The 15 apasyās in groups of five each are laid down in the east, south and west (along the fringes of the body). The other 5 apasyās which are taken to be chandasāṣa also (Ś.B., Kāt. Śr., Vaik. Śr.), are laid down in the north.¹

The cumulative evidence of the texts shows that after placing the special bricks, mentioned above, the remaining space was to be filled with the lokamṛṇās which were required to be placed on the wings and the tail also. This brick has, however, not been mentioned in the T.S.B. and the K.S. But a mantra of the latter reveals the name lokamṛṇā².

The brick, called apāṇabhr³, occurs only in the majority of the texts of the Kṛṣṇa School, the T.S.B., M.S.B., Baud. Śr. and Vaik. Śr. It finds no mention in the texts of the Šukla School. Thus, it is clear that it was confined to the Kṛṣṇa School.

We have already noticed that lokamṛṇā appears only in the M.S.B. of the Kṛṣṇa Yajurveda School. But, besides the Sūtra of that School, the Ś.B. and Kāt. Śr. of the Šukla School also accept it.

The case of dvijājus⁴ reveals a new feature. It is mentioned in the M.S.B. and K.S.B. of the Kṛṣṇa School. This name occurs in the Baud. Śr. but Āpastamba and Vaikhāṇasa omit it. On the other hand, in the Šukla School⁵, this brick

---

2. K.S. XVI. 19.
3. Supra, p. 162.
4. Ibid.
5. Ibid.
continues right from the V.S. and Ś.B. down to the Kāṭ. Śr. Similarly, ṛtavāt occurs in the K.S.B. and is accepted by Baudhāyana and Āpastamba, but is left by Vaikānasā. However, it continues in the Śukla School throughout—in the V.S., Ś.B. and Kāṭ. Śr.

Some important Bricks and their Significance

The significance of the aśāḍhā has already been discussed. It has been identified with earth, speech and vital airs in the Ś.B. After putting this brick, the sacrificer conquers his enemies. Its placing, thus, involves an element of magical operation. The T.S.B. refers to it as devalakṣmam and tryālikhitā and associates it with the support received by the gods in their contest with the Asuras.

The svāyamāṭṭā or the naturally perforated brick is placed in the centre of the first layer of the body. In the mantra of the T.S., it has been invoked as vyacavati (spacious), prathasvati (pthulam), bhūmivati, visvadhyā (visvasya bhuvanasya ḍhārtī). It is desired that the earth may be supported and the world may not be harmed. The brick is naturally perforated in order to permit the breath of cattle and of the sacrificer to pass and also to reveal the heaven. Commenting on the T.S.B., Śāyaṇa explains that this brick should be a small šarkarā stone with perforations (man-made or natural). The brick is compared with earth. The horse is made to sniff it and thereby it bestows breath upon it.

According to the Ś.B., the svāyamāṭṭā symbolising food and breath is placed on the gold man and thus these two are placed close to the man. This

1. Ibid.
2. Ś.B. VII. 4.2.31-34.
3. T.S.B. VII. 4.2.23.
5. T.S. IV. 2.9; K.S. XVI. 16; M.S. II. 7. 16; V.S. XIII. 16; Ś.B. VII. 4.2.4; Baud. Śr. X. 31; Āp. Śr. XVI. 23; Vaik Śr. XXIX/XVIII. 17; Kāṭ. Śr. XVII. 98.
6. T.S. IV. 2.9.
7. Śāyaṇa on T.S.B. V. 2.7; p. 269.
8. Śvavamāṭṭā. In śvavamāṭṭā, the man is symbolised by the woman and the woman by the man. The man represents the world and the woman represents the individual. Ś.B. VII. 4.2.2. Yādā Śvavamāṭṭā... śvavamāṭṭā. Pāṇi śvavamāṭṭā... śvavamāṭṭā. Ibid, VII. 4.2.2.
brick is the foundation of the altar-site or the body of Prajāpati in the task of its restoration. The Sūtras of both the Śukla and Kṛṣṇa Schools have preserved this tradition. It is encircled by 10 prāṇabhṛt bricks.

Then according to the texts of both the Schools, the dūrdvā brick, i.e. fresh green dūrdvā grass, is placed on the svayamāṭrṇā. Āpastamba, however, lays down that the dūrdvā should be taken along with the clod.

The two retahsiks are conceived as the seed-shedding bricks, representing the two worlds. According to the Ś.B., these two are laid down in front of the dviyajus which is in front of the central brick (svayamāṭṛṇā). Kātyāyana also prescribes the laying down of two such bricks in this way. But in the Kṛṣṇa Yajurveda School, the T.S. and the Baud. Śr. refer to only one retahsik brick. Āpastamba provides for one or even two.

The Ś.B. identifies the five groups of 50 prāṇabhṛts with the bestowing of breath on the five victims. The five groups are associated with Vaśiṣṭha, Bhāradvāja, Viśvāmitra, Jamadagni and Viśvakarmā.

The fifteen apasyās, associated with water, are compared to thunderbolt. They are laid down because water has flown out of the victims' heads. In the T.S.B. they are compared to cattle and seed, and are placed so that fire may not burn excessively.

1. यद्वे स्वयमात्रणमपदयाति प्रजापति विस्तरति देवताआदाय व्युदकामस्ततु व्युदकामनन्तु प्रतिक्षाशिशीयोऽविविशति।
   Ibid., VII. 4.23.
2. Baud. Śr. X. 31; Āp. Śr. XVI. 23.1; Vaik. Śr. XXIX/XVIII. 17; Kāṭ. Śr. XVI. 98.
4. Supra, p. 162.
5. संजोच्च हरितं दुर्गाधाममार्गितस्य... | Āp. Śr. XVI. 24.1.
6. अय रेतस्विचारावपदयाति। इमी व लोकी रेतस्विचारो... | Ś.B. VII. 4.2.22.
7. Ś.B. VII. 4.2.22-24; Kāṭ. Śr. XVII. 94.
8. T.S. IV. 2.9; Baud. Śr. X. 31.
9. Āp. Śr. XVI. 24.3-5.
10. अनन्तसहितोऽप्पुर्वमुदयाति। S.B. VIII. 1.1.2.
11. T.S.B. V. 2.10; S.B. VIII. 1.1.6 ff.
12. अप्पुर्वस्य यद्यस्याश्रयाच बालेन्द्रस्य: पुर्वपुस्तकान्तः मवलय, S.B. VII. 5.2.40.
13. T.S.B. V. 2.10.
The dvija is conceived as the human form of the sacrificer and the gold man is his divine form. It is placed close to the gold man to the cast of it on the spine. It is also placed near the dūrveṣṭakā in order to join breath with breath.¹

The vīśvajyotis means literally the ‘all light brick’. It has been identified with Agni and progeny. The Ś.B. prescribes that it should be laid close to the retahṣik bricks.²

The Placing of the Ukhā

The Ukhā is described in the T.S.B.³ as the light of lights. It is filled with sand in the form of Agni Vaiśvānara. The Ś.B.⁴ states that the firepan is placed on the mortar. Having been placed in this way, it is conceived as the womb and has been identified with Prajāpati. The Ukhā is filled with sand and milk.⁵ Āpastamba⁶ lays down that it is filled with ghee, curd, honey and sand or with any one of these. According to Mahādhāra, it is only temporarily placed on the mortar, and, later on, it is removed and placed on the powdered clay to the cast of the mortar.⁷

The Placing of the Victims’ Heads

The victims’ heads are placed on the Ukhā.⁸ It is significant that in the texts of the Kṛṣṇa Yajurveda School there is an attempt to draw a distinction between the human head and the heads of other victims. They prescribe the thrusting of seven gold chips into the seven organs of breath—two eyes, two ears, two nostrils and the mouth of the human head. But this procedure is not to be

---

1. Ś.B. VII. 4. 2. 16, 17, 20.
2. अव विविष्यवृत्तमुद्धवतिः...तमोत्तमतिः रेतस्तिर्द्रामयुद्धवतिः बो लोकों रेतस्तिर्द्रामयुद्धवतिः तदात्मा लोकायात्मविद्यति। श्रवणम. VII. 4. 2. 25, 26.
3. उवाहत्य यत्त परस्त तद्वेदमां (पूर्विक्याद्रोहीं) चोकान्त ज्ञातिः संपादनां उवाहवुद्धात्तुः। Sāyaṇa on T.S. IV. 2. 9.
4. Ś.B. VII. 5. 1. 26, 27.
6. पूर्वार्तितं ययौत धर्मं मनुष्यं स्ववृत्तयान्ति सर्वं। Āp. Śr. XVI. 26. 6.
8. The mortar lies at the distance of one cubit north of the central brick (Ś.B. VII. 5. 1. 12, 13).
9. Ś.B. VII. 5. 2. 1 ff.
observed in respect of other heads. All the texts are also unanimous in laying down rules for making the human head mediha or fit for sacrifice by anointing it with curd and honey symbolically representing the produces of the household and jungle. According to Āpastamba and Vaikānasā, the human head is placed with the mantra ‘Sahasrasīrā puruṣat’ etc. The head of the horse is in the east looking west and that of the bull, in the west looking east. The Ś.B. also prescribes the placing of the heads of five victims on the Ukhā. Gold chips are thrust into the seven organs of breath of each head. In this school, we thus, find that the procedure of thrusting gold chips is observed with all the heads. The Ś.B. discusses whether only 7 or 35 gold chips are to be thrust, in case the head of only one victim is used. The text favours the former practice of thrusting 7 gold chips only and disapproves the latter. Kātyāyana, however, provides both the alternatives.

The whole treatment of the Ś.B. in connection with the placing of the heads is on the assumption that they should be five. So far as the mantras are concerned, the Ś.B. does not make any distinction whether the heads are five or one. On the other hand, Kātyāyana lays down that each of the five heads should be placed with the mantra ‘ādityāh garbham’ etc. In case there is only one victim’s head, all the five mantras should be recited on it. The heads are placed on the Ukhā which is full of milk and an offering is made on the human head whereby man alone is made fit for sacrifice.

The Ukhā is the womb and by being placed thereon the animals do not

---

1. T.S.B. V. 2. 9; K.S.B. XX. 3; M.S. B. III. 2. 7.
2. E. g. T.S.B. V. 2. 9; Baud. Sr. X. 33.
4. Ś.B. VII. 5. 2. 18, 19.
5. Ś.B. VII. 5. 2. 1.
6. Ibid, VII. 5. 2. 8, 9.
7. Ibid, VII. 5. 2. 10.
9. Ś.B. VII. 5. 2. 1 ff.
10. आदित्य गर्भायनं प्रतिस्वयः। Kāt. Sr. XVII. 116.
11. सब्यंस्तन्त्रभक्ष्यश्च। Ibid, XVII. 121.
12. यथा पुष्पदंक्षेयक्षोदिति। आदित्यश्च यथा व: पुष्पव तत्स्यूनाम विलितं करोति तस्मात्पुष्पव शरीयते। Ś.B. VII. 5. 2. 23.
diminish. Then by being placed there they are united with the trunks (kabandhas). The human head is placed in the middle and the heads of the other victims are placed on both the sides—the heads of horse and ram on the left (north) and those of the bull and he-goat on the right (south). By placing the human head in the middle, the man, the eater of cattle, is placed in the midst of cattle.

**Removal of Distress**

The texts of both the schools, from the mantras of the Saṁhitās up to the Śūtras, prescribe the Utsarga ceremony, by standing near the heads, intended to divert the wrath of Agni towards other animals and protect the heads and the species of the victims whose heads they are. The wrath is directed from man, horse, bull, ram and he-goat to mayu or kimpuruṣa, gavayamāranya, gauramāranya, uṣtramāranya and śarabhamaṁāranya respectively.

**The Placing of the Kūrma**

The live tortoise, according to the Ś.B., is placed on the south of the aśādhā at the distance of 1 cubit (2 ft.). The T.S.B., however, lays down that it should be placed to the east of the śvayamātṛṇā, facing east. In the Śukla School, as the evidence of the Ś.B. shows, the Kūrma is covered with avakā plants symbolising water. This tradition has been borrowed by Āpastamba in the Kṛṣṇa School as well. The tortoise is anointed with curd, honey and ghee.

---

1. तस्मातार्थातः प्रथमातः पशुवं न शीतले योगी हर्षात्प्रभापः। इबिद, VII, 5, 2, 2.
2. या व ता: विरुपायानं तानं पशुवं युक्तं यानं तानं कुसितशः।
3. मध्ये पुरुषभिमर्गलं तथा दशात तस्मातः एव पशुं मध्यतोऽत्तरे। इबिद, VII, 5, 2, 14.
4. कृष्णमय according to Śāyaṇa (on T.S. IV, 2.10).
5. T.S. IV, 2.10; K.S. XVI, 17–17; M.S. II, 7.17; Ś.B. VII, 5, 2.32 (Kimpuruṣa appears in the Ś.B.); Baudh. Śr. X, 33; Āp. Śr. XVI, 27. 14 ff.
6. In the Vaikṣ. Śr. (XXIX/XVIII. 17) we find the option of placing of a frog also.
7. Ś.B. VII, 5, 1, 6.
9. Ś.B. VII, 5, 1, 11.
10. Āp. Śr. XVI, 25, 1, 2.
11. E.g. Ś.B. VII, 5, 1, 3.
A live tortoise is placed, lest by the presence of the lifeless heads of man and animals the sacrificial altar might be turned into Śmaśānacīti. It is also conceived as the knower of the path to heaven and as the intelligence of animals. It is identified with the three worlds, Prajāpati and the yonder Sun.

*The Placing of the Head of a Snake*

Baudhāyana and Āpastamba specifically prescribe that the head of a snake should be placed in the first layer. The *mantra* containing the invocation to snake occurs in the T.S. (IV. 2. 8). It has been ignored in the T.S.B., which, according to Sāyaṇa, is due to the fact that the practice was too obvious to require a separate mention. But Āpastamba and Vaikhānasā refer to this *mantra*.

In the other school also, as the evidence of the Ś.B. shows, the snake formula has a considerable significance, but there is no specific mention of placing the head of a snake.

*The Placing of Bricks according to the Ś.B.*

On the spine in front (east) of a central stone (*svayamātraṇa*), 1 *dvijayuj*, 2 *retaḥsikṣ* (one on either side of the spine and joined to each other), 1 *viśvajyotis*, 2 *ptavyās* (one on either side of the spine and joined to each other) and the *aśādha* are spread in a continuous row. Then 15 *apasyās* are placed on the fringes of the body, 5 bricks being in each quarter. In the fourth quarter, 5 *apasyās* are placed which are called *chandasyās* also. After that, 50 *prāṇabhṛt* bricks are

---

1. Śmaśānā, *ibid*, 27; Śr. XVI. 27. 22.
2. Sāyaṇa on T.S.B. V. 2. 8, p. 275.
3. Ś.B. VII. 5. 1. 2, 5, 6.
4. Baud. Śr. X. 27; Āp. Śr. XVI. 27. 22.
6. Āp. Śr. XVI. 27. 22; the Vaik. Śr. permit the head of god.ā in the absence of snake-head (नसिग्नादि) XXIX/XVIII. 19.
7. Ś.B. VII. 4. 1. 25 ff.
8. Ś. B. VII. 4. 2. 1 ff.
9. Ś.B. VII. 5. 2. 41.
10. Ibid, VII. 5. 2. 42.
laid down of which four sets of 10 bricks each are placed on the four diagonals and the fifth set is laid down round the svayamātrnā at the distance or on the range of the two retaḥsik bricks. Then, the lokamātrnā bricks, 1929 in all, which fill the remaining space of the body, the wings and the tail, are laid down.

Reference to Bones in the First Layer

In the Ś.B. retaḥsik bricks are identified with ribs which are placed in the middle. Agni has been equated with a mighty buffalo. Further, it has also been identified with an animal—svayamātrnā, the naturally perforated brick, is his lower vital air, the dviyajas his hip, the two retaḥasik bricks the ribs, the viśvajyotis the breast-bone, the two seasonal bricks (ṛtayās) the back, the asādhā the neck and the tortoise the head. The chandasyā bricks are compared with cattle. Their placing represents the restoration of flesh and bone taken out earlier. The bricks are also spoken of as fingers and toes, and the sacrificer is required to put them on all sides. We also find a reference to the fact that the heads are placed on the altar with a view to restore the trunks evidently deposited in the layer. The praṇabhṛi bricks are not to be separated from animals and, therefore, one is placed on every side.

According to Baudhāyana, after completing the first layer, the pravargya ceremony is performed in the afternoon of the first day and on the mornings of the second and third days. On the second day, a black horse is touched and puriṣa is laid on the altar with some mantras. Other texts also prescribe that puriṣa or sand should be laid down on the altar at this stage.

1. Ibid, VIII. 1. 1. 1; see also S.B.E., vol. XLIII, pt. IV, pp. 1-2 fn.
2. Ibid, VIII. 1. 4. 10.
5. Ibid, VII. 3. 1. 34.
6. Ibid, VII. 5. 1. 35.
7. Ibid, VII. 5. 2. 42.
8. Ibid, VIII. 1. 1. 2.
9. Ibid, VII. 5. 2. 3; also supra, p. 169 fn. 2.
10. S. B. VIII. 1. 1. 2.
11. Baud. Śr. X. 37.
12. कात्वश्रीरणि निर्णयिष्मिति। Kāt. Śr. XVII. 131.
The Second Layer

Bricks

The names of bricks occurring in the texts—Sāṁhitās, Brāhmaṇas and Sūtras of both the schools are āśvinī,1 rtavyā,2 prāṇabhrīt,3 apasyā,4 vṛṣṭisani,5 vayasyā,6 sayuja,7 samyānti,8 vaisvadevi,9 and lokamṛṇā."10

The only brick which is common to the Sāṁhitās, Brāhmaṇas and Sūtras of both the schools is āśvinī, five in number. Vayasyā occurs everywhere except in the M.S.B. Apasyā also figures in the texts of both the schools except the T.S.B. and the Baud. Śr. Similar is the case with rtavyā which is omitted only by the K.S.B.

1. Five in number according to all the texts:
T. S. IV. 3. 4; K. S. XVII. 1; M. S. II. 8.1; V. S. XIV. 1; T. S. B. V. 3. 1; K. S. B. XX. 10; M. S. B. III. 2.9; Ś. B. VIII. 2.1.4-9; Baud. Śr. X. 38; Āp. Śr. XVII. 1.2; Vaik. Śr. XXX/XIX. 3; Sat. Śr. XII. 1.2; Kāṭ. Śr. XVII. 165 ff. Pāṇini also mentions this brick (Aṣṭādhyāyī, IV. 4.126).

2. Five in the T. S. B. and M. S. B.; two in the Ś. B., Baud. Śr., Āp. Śr., Vaik. Śr. and Kāṭ. Śr.: T. S. IV. 3. 4; K. S. XVII. I; M. S. II. 8.1; V. S. XIV. 6; T. S. B. V. 3. 1; K. S. B. XX. 10; M. S. B. III. 2.9; Ś. B. VIII. 2.1.16 ff.; Baud Śr. X. 38; Āp. Śr. XVII. 1.7; Vaik. Śr. XXX/XIX. 3; Sat. Śr. XII. 1.4; Kāṭ. Śr. XVII. 194.

3. Five in the T. S. B., Ś. B., Baud. Śr., Āp. Śr., Vaik. Śr. and Kāṭ. Śr.: T. S. IV. 3.4; K. S. XVII. 1; M. S. II. 8.2; T. S. B. V. 3.1; Ś. B. VIII. 2.3.3; Baud. Śr. X. 38; Āp. Śr. XVII. 1.4; Vaik. Śr. XXX/XIX. 3; Sat. Śr. XII. 1.4; Kāṭ. Śr. XVII. 185.

4. Four in the M. S. B. and five in the Ś. B., Āp. Śr., Vaik. Śr. and Kāṭ. Śr.: T. S. IV. 3.4; K. S. XVII. I; M. S. II. 8.2; K. S. B. XX. 10; M. S. B. III. 2.9; Ś. B. VIII. 2.3.6; Āp. Śr. XVII. 1.5; Vaik. Śr. XXX/XIX. 3; Sat. Śr. XII. 1.5; Kāṭ. Śr. XVII. 186.

5. Five in the Baud. Śr.: T. S. IV. 3.4; K. S. XVII. 1; M. S. II. 8.2; T. S. B. V. 3.1; Baud. Śr. X. 38.

6. Nineteen in the Ś. B.: T. S. IV. 3.5; K. S. XVII. 2; M. S. II. 8.2; V. S. XIV. 9; T. S. B. V. 3.1; K. S. B. XX. 10; Ś. B. VIII. 2.3.6; Baud. Śr. X. 38; Āp. Śr. XVII. 1.9; Vaik. Śr. XXX/XIX. 3; Kāṭ. Śr. XVII. 187. The name of this brick occurs in the Aṣṭādhyāyī also (IV. 4.127).

7. Two in the Baud. Śr. X. 38.

8. One in the Baud. Śr. X. 38 and two in the Vaik. Śr. XXX/XIX. 3.

9. Five in the Ś. B. and Kāṭ. Śr.: V. S. XV. 7; Ś. B. VIII. 2.1.1f; Kāṭ. Śr. XVII. 183.

10. Ś. B. VIII. 2.4.20; Baud. Śr. X. 38; Kāṭ. Śr. XVII. 190. According to the Ś. B., each layer requires 1929 Lokamṛṇā—1028 for the body, 309 for each wing and 283 for the tail (S. B. E., vol. XLIII, pt. IV, p. 22 fn.).
Viṣṭisāni is a brick which is confined to the Kṛṣṇa School. It occurs in the Sānkhijāta and Brāhmaṇas of this school and also in the Baud. Śr. It is, however, dropped by Āpastamba and Vaikhānasa.

Vaiś vadēvi is confined only to the texts of the Śukla School—V.S., Ś.B. and Kāt. Śr.

Lokamṛṇās are mentioned only in the Ś.B., Kāt. Śr. and Baud. Śr.

Sayujā and saṁyāṇi are very rare bricks, being prescribed only by Baudhāyana; the latter has been prescribed by Vaikhānasa also.

Placing of the Special Bricks according to the Ś.B.

The special bricks of the second layer are so arranged on the range of the retaḥśik as to form the outer rim of a square measuring 5 ft. on each side. The middle is blank. Each side, proceeding in the sun-wise way, from left to right, has the following bricks—āśvinī, vaiś vadēvi, āparahṛt and apasyā. The apasyās occupy the corner places and each of them is common to two sides. On the southern side, each class of the āśvinī, vaiś vadēvi, āparahṛt and apasyā consists of 2 half-bricks joined together with their long sides from east to west. The two ōtavyās are placed to the east of the square, leaving a distance of one pāda, north and south of the spine, exactly over the two ōtavyās of the first layer. The nineteen vayasyās are placed at the four ends of the two spines, five in each of the southern, western and northern quarters and four in the eastern quarter. The remaining space of the body is filled up with lokamṛṇās which are placed on the wings and tail also.

Significance of the Special Bricks of the Second Layer

Āśvinīs—These bricks are associated with the Āśvin deities. They are considered as representing that part of the body of Prajāpati which is above the feet and below the navel. This part of his body was taken over by the Āśvins.
The ṛtāyāṇa bricks represent the seasons, Śukra and Śuci, the two summer seasons. The vaiśvadeviś are placed along side the āśvinis which symbolise the creation of creatures by Prajāpati in union with Aśvins. Vaiśvadevi represents the creatures and the prāṇabhṛṣ, the vital airs. In this way the sacrificer bestows vital airs on the creatures. The apasyā bricks are placed close to the prāṇabhṛṣ so as to put water into vital airs. They also signify food. The chandayās, otherwise called voyasyās, are placed close to the apasyās which symbolise the establishment of cattle on water. According to the T.S.B. also, they represent cattle. The vrṣṭisani bricks are conceived as an aid to rain-fall and are not placed in one place, lest rain might fall at one place only. In the case of malevolent rites (abhicāra), vrṣṭisani is placed after apasyās with a view to make the foe devoid of cattle.

The Evidence of Bones and Animals

The second layer is known as the layer of animals. The Ś.B. identifies the āśvinis bricks with that part of Prajāpati which was above the feet and below the navel and they signify the restoration of that part of his in the second layer of the altar. The range of the retaḥṣik and the retaḥṣik bricks are associated with ribs. The chandayās are identified with cattle. According to the Ś.B., while laying down the four chandayās in front, the sacrificer recites the mantra (V.S. XIV. 9), ‘The head is vigour’ etc. We find vigour

1. T. S. B. V. 3.2; Ś. B. VIII. 2. 1. 16.
2. Ś. B. VIII. 2. 2. 7, 8.
3. त्वरितत्त्वातः प्राणावधाति। Ś. B. VIII. 2. 3. 3. According to the T. S. B. V. 3. 3, they represent the bestowing of breath on the seasons.
4. Ś. B. VIII. 2. 3. 6.
5. वर्तमानामः प्राणावधाति। Ś. B. VIII. 2. 3. 6.
6. अपि तत्त्वावधाति। Ś. B. VIII. 2. 3. 8.
7. वर्तमानामः प्राणावधाति। T. S. B. V. 3. 1.
10. Ś. B. VI. 2.3.10.
11. यह कम्भेताभृष्टमविद्विभिः प्राणावधाति। प्राणावधाति। Ibid, VIII. 2. 1. 15; also VIII. 2. 2. 6.
12. चन्द्रमाण् प्राणावधाति। P. B. चन्द्रमाण्यमविद्विभिः प्राणावधाति। Ibid, VIII. 2. 3. 8.
identified¹ with he-goat, ram, man, tiger, lion, ox, bull, steer, bullock, milch-cow, calf of eighteen months, two-year-old bull, a bull of two and half years, three-year-old bull and four-year-old bull.

Further, Agni is conceived as an animal.² Those parts of the animal bodies which are placed in front are the head of Agni, those on the right and left sides are his body, and those behind, his tail. He first lays down those in front, for, of an animal that is born, the head is born first. Thus they are laid on the south and north and behind (west).³ The animals that are biggest, he puts in the middle, thereby making the animal biggest towards the middle. The strongest animals are placed on the right side.⁴ At the back he places the smallest animals. The fore-part is also small.⁵

In the T.S.B.⁶ also we get reference to wild animals—tiger, lion, ram, goat, calf of eighteen months and two-year-old bull and man—in connection with the second layer.

After the completion of the second layer, the sacrificer performs the pravargya-upasad ceremony on the morning of the fourth day. He also deposits puriṣa on the altar. On the morning of the fifth day, the pravargya-upasad ceremony is performed again with certain rites including the touching of a white horse. Then the laying of the bricks starts.

The Third Layer

Bricks

The special bricks of this layer occurring in the texts of both the schools

1. Ibid, VIII. 2.4. 1-16.
3. स वै पुरस्ताद्वपयति। तिरो हि प्रथम वाक्मात्त्व: वाक्मात्त्व: दक्षिणेऽप्यार्यात्त्व: वाक्मात्त्वः साक्षमात्त्वः वाक्मात्त्वः वाक्मात्त्वः। S.B. VIII. 2. 4. 18.
4. यथा स्वर्णित: पवस्तात्त्व: वाक्मात्त्व: मथ्यं तपस्तिः पब्द वृष्टिः करौ। ... व साक्षमात्त्व: पवस्तात्त्व: वाक्मात्त्वः। S.B. VIII. 2. 4. 19.
5. प्रवर्ग्यासुल्लेखः पञ्चास्तुप्रकरितः। ... Ibid, VIII. 2. 4. 20.
are svayamāṭṛṇā, dīyāsā (5 according to the T.S.B., M.S.B., Vaik. Śr., Ś.B. and Kāṭ. Śr.), prāṇabhīṭṭā (10 according to the T.S.B., M.S.B., Vaik. Śr., Ś.B. and Kāṭ. Śr.), jyotismatīsā (10 in the T.S.B.), bṛhatīsā (36 according to the T.S.B. and Āp. Śr. or chandasīsā according to the texts of the Śukla Yajurveda), vālakhilīyāsā (14 according to the T.S.B., Āp. Śr., Vaik. Śr., Ś.B. and Kāṭ. Śr.), viśvajottīsā (1 according to the Baud. Śr., Āp. Śr., Vaik. Śr., Ś.B. and Kāṭ. Śr.), ātavīsā (4 according to the Baud. Śr., Āp. Śr., Vaik. Śr., Ś.B. and Kāṭ. Śr.), sanyāṁtiśā (2 in the Āp. Śr. and Vaik. Śr. only), hiranyesākā (1 in the Baud. Śr., Āp. Śr., and Vaik. Śr.), bhūkeśṭakāsā (2 in the Āp. Śr., Vaik. Śr. and Sat. Śr.), lokaprajnāsā (11 in the T.S.B., Baud. Śr., V.S., and Kāṭ. Śr.), retahśikā (12 in the Baud. Śr.), mandalesṭakās (in the Āp. Śr. and Sat. Śr.), yajusmatīsā (in the Kāṭ. Śr. prescribed as optional) and vaikhānasā (5 in the Śrauta Sūtra of Vaikhānasā only).

It is significant to notice that svayamāṭṛṇā and vālakhilīyās are common

1. T. S. IV. 3.6; K. S. XVII. 3; M. S. II. 8.3; V. S. XIV. 11; T. S. B. V. 3.2; K. S. B. XX 11; M. S. B. III. 2.9; Ś. B. VIII. 3.1.3.10; Baud. Śr. X. 39; Āp. Śr. XVII. 1.12; Vaik. Śr. XXX/XIX. 3; Sat. Śr. XII. 1.9; Kāṭ. Śr. XVII. 191.
2. T. S. IV. 3.6; K. S. XVII. 3; M. S. II. 8.3; V. S. XIV. 13; T. S. B. V. 3.2; K. S. B. XX 11; M. S. B. III. 2.9; Ś. B. VIII. 3.1.13; Baud. Śr. X. 40; Vaik. Śr. XXX/XIX. 3; Sat. Śr. XII. 1.13.
3. T. S. IV. 3.6; K. S. XVII. 3; M. S. II. 8.3; V. S. XIV. 17; T. S. B. V. 3.2; K. S. B. XX 11; M. S. B. III. 2.9; Ś. B. VIII. 3.2.14; Vaik. Śr. XXX/XIX. 3; Kāṭ. Śr. XVII. 197.
4. T. S. IV. 3.6; K. S. XVII. 3; M. S. II. 8.3; chandasī occurs in V. S. XIV. 18; T. S. B. V. 3.2; K. S. B. XX. 11; M. S. B. III. 2.9; Ś. B. VIII. 3.3.1; Baud. Śr. X. 40; Kāṭ. Śr. XVII. 198.
5. T. S. IV. 3.7; K. S. XVII. 3; M. S. II. 8.3; V. S. XIV. 21; T. S. B. V. 3.2; K. S. B. XX 11; M. S. B. III. 2.9; Ś. B. VIII. 3.4.1; Baud. Śr. X. 40; Āp. Śr. XVII. 2.5; Vaik. Śr. XXX/XIX. 3; Sat. Śr. XII. 1.16; Kāṭ. Śr. XVII. 200.
6. K. S. II. 8.3; M. S. XVII. 3; V. S. XIV. 14; T. S. B. V. 3.2; K. S. B. XX. 11; M. S. B. III. 2.3; Ś. B. VIII. 3.2.2; Baud. Śr. X. 40; Āp. Śr. XVII. 1.17; Vaik. Śr. XXX/XIX. 3; Sat. Śr. XII. 1.16; Kāṭ. Śr. XVII. 201.
7. V. S. XIV. 15, 16; Ś. B. VIII. 2.2.5; Baud. Śr. X. 40; Āp. Śr. XVII. 2.1; Vaik. Śr. XXX/XIX. 3; Kāṭ. Śr. XVII. 194.
8. Āp. Śr. XVII. 1.16; Vaik. Śr. XXX/XIX. 3; Sat. Śr. XII. 1.11.
9. Baud. Śr. X. 39; Āp. Śr. XVII. 1.14; Vaik. Śr. XXX/XIX. 3; Sat. Śr. XII. 1.11.
10. Āp. Śr. XVII. 2.6; Vaik. Śr. XXX/XIX. 3; Sat. Śr. XII. 1.17.
11. V. S. XIV. 22; Ś. B. VIII. 3.4.15; Baud. Śr. X. 40; Kāṭ. Śr. XVII. 205.
13. Āp. Śr. XVII. 1.15; Sat. Śr. XII. 1.11.
14. Kāṭ. Śr. XVII. 204.
15. Vaik. Śr. XXX/XIX. 3.
to the Samhitās, Brāhmaṇas and Sūtras of the two schools. Dīṣya also occurs in all the texts except in Āpastamba. Prāṇabhyttas occur in all the texts of the two schools except in the Śrauta Sūtras of Baudhāyana and Āpastamba. Viśvajyotis and rtaṃīṣ occur in the V.S., Ś.B. and Kāt. Śr. They do not figure in the Samhitās and the Brāhmaṇas of the Kṛṣṇa School. But the Sūtras of this school—Baudhāyana, Āpastamba and Vaiḵāṇasa—prescribe them, evidently under the influence of the Śukla School.

Similarly, the tradition of placing lokamṛṇās starts in the Śukla School, as embodied in the V.S., Ś.B. and Kāt. Śr. Among the texts of the Kṛṣṇa School, only the Āp. Śr., adopts it.

Jyotiṣmatīs occurring in the T.S., T.S.B, K. S.B., M.S.B. and Baud. Śr. are confined to the Kṛṣṇa School only. But the later texts of that school, the Āp. Śr. and Vaiḵ. Śr., drop them. The tradition of bhṛtis is also confined to this school; only Vaiḵāṇasa shows a break. The name chandaṣya for the same brick is confined to the Śukla School only.

In the texts of the Śukla school we find uniformity with the only exception that Kāṭyāyana provides for the option of yajusmaṭīs. But the Sūtras of the Kṛṣṇa School introduce a number of new bricks. Baudhāyana introduces in his school hiranyesṭakā, retaḥsik, rtaṃīṣ, viśvajyotis and lokamṛṇā for this layer. Āpastamba invents maṇḍaleṣṭakā and bhūṭeṣṭakā. Vaiḵāṇasa adopts bhūṭeṣṭakā and also invents a novel brick known as the vaikhaṇasa.

Placing of the Bricks

The svayamāṭṛṇā or the naturally perforated brick is placed in the middle. The five dīṣyaś are placed on the spines in the four directions at the retaḥsik range, at a distance of one foot. The two southern ones are half-bricks lying north and south of each other. A viśvajyotis brick is placed to the east of the

2. Ibid.
3. Ibid.
4. Ibid.
eastern diśyā just close to it, and then 2 rtaśvās\(^1\) are placed to the east of the visvajyotis, one north of the other. The ten, praṇabhṛts\(^3\) are placed 5 on each side of the spine. The thirty-six chandasyās\(^5\) are laid down in three sets of 12 each, along the edge of the body of the altar where the two wings and the tail join it. Then 7 vālakhilyās\(^4\) are placed in front and 7 at the back. The lokamṛṣṇās\(^6\) are placed in the remaining space of the body and on the wings and tail. Finally, loose earth is thrown on this layer.\(^6\)

Significance of some Special Bricks

The diśyās are conceived as signifying the regions. They are placed close to the svayamātrṛṇā which represents air. The diśyās are also identified with food.\(^7\) Dūrvā grass and clod-bricks are placed before the diśyās, which symbolises the placing of animals in the air.\(^8\) The visvajyotis\(^9\) is identified with light and offspring. The rtaśvās\(^10\) represent seasons and the praṇabhṛts\(^11\), the vital airs. The chandasyās\(^12\) represent cattle and food. The vālakhilyās\(^13\) are so called because they are separated from one another by the width of a horse-hair. They symbolise the vital airs.\(^14\)

References to Bones in the Third Layer

The diśyā bricks are identified with animals.\(^15\) The range of the retaḥsik

---

1. Ibid, p. 48 fn.
2. Ibid, p. 51 fn. 1.
3. Ibid, P. 51 fn. 2.
5. Ibid, p. 58.
7. अभि विद्याज्ञपदवतिः। दिशो वेद दिश्या।।
8. Ibid, VIII. 3. 1. 11.
10. Ibid, VIII. 3. 2. 5.
12. Ibid, VIII. 3. 3. 1.
13. यद्वलामात्रस्वास्तवर्तमाद्वकस्त्य।। ibid, VIII. 3.4.1.
15. यद्वि विद्याज्ञपदवतिः। छत्रांसि वेद दिशो।।
   ततः।। ततः।। ततः।। Š.B. VIII. 3.1.12.
in this layer also has been associated with ribs.¹ The chandaṣyā bricks are identified with cattle.² The r̥tavyās are equated with four-footed animals.³ In connection with the vālakhiliyā bricks, the following parts of the body of Prajāpati have been mentioned—upper and lower parts of the forefeet, the head, the neck, hip-bones, thighs, knee bones and feet.⁴

On the morning of the sixth day, the pravargya-upasad ceremony is performed and ṭuriṣṭa is thrown on the altar. On the seventh day, the ceremony is again performed. The sacrificer puts on the upānaha of kṛṣṇājina. Then with certain rites, including the touching of a white horse and the reciting of the sūdadohas, the laying down of the bricks of the fourth layer starts.⁵

**The Fourth Layer**

**Bricks**

The texts of both the schools mention the names of very few bricks. They are as under:

Aksṇyāstomīyā (8 in the T.S.B.), śprti (10 in the T.S.B. and Ś.B.), śṛṣṭi (17 in the T.S.B., Ś.B., Baud. Śr., Āp. Śr., Vaik. Śr. and Kāt. Śr.), vyuṣṭi (16 in the T.S.B., Āp. Śr., Vaik. Śr. and Sat. Śr.), r̥tavyā (2 in the V.S., Ś.B., Baud.

---

1. पृष्ठो वै रेखस: तिच्छ, ibid, VIII. 3.1.13.
2. अय चाष्टम्प्रववधवतः पवतो वै छन्ददस्तरिद मध्यम, ibid, VIII. 3.3.1.
3. पवेश भवतः। पवत्वादान वै पववोज्व पवतो मध्यम मध्यम: नित्यमभाववल्लवं दमाति। ibid, VIII. 3.2.10.
4. Ibid, VIII. 3.4.4, 5, 12-14.
5. Baud. Śr. X. 41.
6. T. S. IV. 3.8; K. S. XVII. 4; M. S. II. 8.4; V. S. XIV. 23; T. S. B. V. 3.3; K. S.B. XX. 13; M. S. B. III. 2.10; Ś. B. VIII. 4.1.8-27; Baud. Śr. X. 42; Vaik. Śr. XXX/XIX. 4; Sat. Śr. XII. 1.22.
7. T. S. IV. 3.9; K. S. XVII. 4; M. S. II. 8.5; V. S. XIV. 24; T. S. B. V. 3.4; K. S. B. XX. 13; M. S. B. III. 2.10; Ś. B. VIII. 4.2.1-13.
8. T. S. IV. 3.10; K. S. XVII. 4; M. S. II. 8.6; V. S. XIV. 28; T. S. B. V. 3.4; K. S. B. XX. 13; M. S. B. III. 2.10; Ś. B. VIII. 4.3.20; Baud. Śr. X. 42; Āp. Śr. XVII. 2.11; Vaik. Śr. XXX/XIX. 4; Sat. Śr. XII. 1.25; Kāt. Śr. XVII. 222.
9. T. S. IV. 3.11; T. S. B. V. 3.4; Baud. Śr. X. 42; Āp. Śr. XVII. 2.12; Vaik. Śr. XXX/XIX. 4; Sat. Śr. XII. 1.26.
10. V. S. XIV. 27; Ś. B. VIII. 4.2.14; Baud. Śr. X. 41; Āp. Śr. XVII. 2.10; Vaik. Śr. XXX/XIX. 4; Sat. Śr. XII. 1.24; Kāt. Śr. XVII. 221.
Sr., Ap. Sr., Vaik. Sr. and Sat. Sr.), lokamprāṇī (V.S., Ś.B., Kāt. Sr. and Baudh. Sr.), saṃyāṇī (1 in the Baudh. Sr. and 2 in Ap. Sr., Vaik. Sr. and Sat. Sr.), saṃyāṇī (2 in the Baudh. Sr. only), stoma (18 in the Ś.B.) and jaṅghāmārī (28 in the Kāt. Sr. only, which include the stoma and sṛṣṭi bricks of the V.S. and Ś.B.).

The names sṛṣṭi, sṛṣṭi and stoma (akṣuṣṭomāyī in the Kṛṣṇa School) are common to the Saṁhitās and Brāhmaṇas of the two schools. Sṛṣṭis continue in all the Śūtras of both the schools. Akṣuṣṭomāyī has been dropped only by Āpastamba in the Kṛṣṇa School. The stoma brick has been included among the jaṅghāmārīs by Kātyāyana. Further, the tradition of the sṛṣṭi is dropped in the Śūtras of the Kṛṣṇa School. In the Śukla School Kātyāyana includes them among the jaṅghāmārīs.

The two rāvyās occur throughout in the Saṁhitā, Brāhmaṇa and Śūtra of the Śukla School. The Śūtras of the Kṛṣṇa School adopt them which is evidently due to the influence of the other school. The tradition of the lokamprāṇas is also borrowed by Baudhāyana from the Śukla School where it occurs throughout.

The sixteen suṣṭis are confined to the Kṛṣṇa School only. Baudhāyana introduces sayuṣṭa and saṃyāṇī for this layer; the latter has been accepted by Āpastamba and Vaikhānasa with the only addition that they increase the number from one to two.⁶

Placing of the Bricks of the Fourth Layer

The first bricks to be laid down are those representing stomas which are 18 in number. At each end of the spine, on the east and west, 1 brick of the size of a shank (from knee to ankle) is placed with line-marks running from west to east, the eastern one being placed north and the western one south of the spine. Then an ordinary brick, measuring a foot square, is placed near the southern end of the cross-spine. Fourteen half-foot bricks are then laid down to the

1. V. S. XIV. 31; Ś.B. VIII. 4. 4. 12; Baudh. Sr. X. 41; Kāt. Sr. XVII. 223.
2. Baudh. Sr. X. 41; Ap. Sr. XVII. 2. 9; Vaik. Sr. XXX/XIX. 4; Sat. Sr. XII. 1. 23.
west of the front (eastern) brick in a row from north to south, seven being on either side of the spine.

Then the ten sṛṭ bricks are placed. Two bricks of the size of the stoma bricks are placed at the front and back ends of the spine, south and north. Two other bricks are placed on the cross-spine immediately north of the stoma bricks. They measure a foot square. The other six bricks are placed behind the row of the fourteen stoma bricks, three on either side of the spine.

Then the two ṛtavyās are placed just over those of the preceding layer. Thereafter, the seventeen sṛṣṭis are placed round the centre along the retaksik range, nine bricks lying south and eight north of the spine. Five bricks form the southern side, there being a half-foot brick after every full brick (a foot square). On each of the eastern and western sides, there are four bricks, one half-brick being at every end. There are four full bricks on the northern side. Finally, the lokamṛṇās are laid down on the altar and then loose soil is thrown thereon.

Significance of Some Special Bricks

The stoma bricks are identified with the vital airs, and by placing them, the sacrificer is supposed to place Vāyu in this layer. Mahīdhara bestows the attribute of 'ṁṛtyumohini' on the first four of the stoma bricks. It is further mentioned that by placing these bricks, the sacrificer restores to Prajāpati that part of his body which is above the waist and below the head. The sṛṭ bricks are so called because Prajāpati freed all beings from evil and death. The two ṛtavyās (seasonal bricks) in this layer symbolise Saha and Sahasya, the two winter seasons.

---

1. Ibid, p. 66 fn. 2.
2. Ibid, p. 70 fn. 1.
4. लोकमृण्यः उपवचारः... पुराण निबचति... Ś.B. VIII. 4. 4. 12.
5. यद्वत्र स्तोमनुपद्यति। प्राप्त हैं स्तोमा। प्राणपुरुष व्ययोबः व्याध्यायाः। Ś.B. VIII. 4. 1. 4. 8.
7. यद्वत्र मध्यवधारी शीणम्। एतद्य तदानन्तरभेद्वादेवदान्तोपद्यति। Ś.B. VIII. 4.1. 6. 8.
8. सत्तैणि भूमानि पापण्यो मूलो स्नेहीति तत्सातु तत्सातु स्नेहीति स्नेहीति। Ś.B. VIII. 4. 2. 2.
9. भूतवात्त्वे यद्वते स्तोमस्तिपुद्यतुः दवतिषि सहस्र सहस्त्रच्छ हृद्धितावृद्धिति। Ś.B. VIII. 4. 2. 14.
The srṣīs are associated with the creation of beings by Prajāpati.¹ In the T.S., these bricks are conceived as signifying² the origin of Brahma, Kṣatra, Vaiśya and Śūdra, and there is an invocation to Prajāpati as the creator and preserver of all beings, who freed them from disturbances.³

The fourth layer represents what is above the air and below the heaven.⁴ It is identified with Brahma⁵ and is conceived as the layer of Prajāpati.⁶ It is also called ṛṣeyavatī as ṛṣīs are laid down in this layer and bandhumatī, for Vāyu is conceived as being laid down in it.

Reference to the Bones and Parts of the Human Body

The fourth layer is conceived as the layer of Prajāpati.⁸ The eighteen stōna bricks are associated with the restoration of the various parts of the body of Prajāpati.⁹ The range of the retālsik is associated with ribs in this layer also.¹⁰ In connection with the restoration¹¹ of Agni, conceived as an animal, we find reference to the head, the hind-feet, two arms, the ribs (in the middle), jaws and the tongue.

In the morning of the eighth day, the pravargya-upasad ceremony is again performed and purīṣa is thrown. On the ninth day also, this ceremony is repeated. A number of other ancillary rites have been prescribed which include the putting on of kṛṣṇajina-upānaha, and the touching of the white horse.¹²

---

1. तत्तचान्ज्ञान तक्षमात्सर्वयस्माङ्गरे: etc. Ś.B. VIII. 4.3.20.
2. T.S. IV. 3.10.
4. चतुष्कोट्वर्तिति। समर्पणस्वते आयुर्वेदोऽवि। Ś.B. VIII. 4.1.2.
5. हर्क व चतुष्कोट्वर्तिति। Ś.B. VIII. 4.1.3.
8. Supra, fn. 6.
9. Ś.B. VIII. 4.1.8; VIII. 4.4.12.
10. पृष्ट्यो व रस्त्वितो। Ibid, VIII. 4.3.20.
11. Ibid, VIII. 4.4.4-11.
12. Baud. Śr. X. 44.
The Fifth Layer

Bricks*

We find a large number of names of bricks mentioned in connection with the fifth layer in all the texts. They are as follows:—

Asapatanā¹ (5 in the Ś.B.), svayamātṛṣṇā,² virāja³ (12 in the T.S.B., 40 in Baud. Śr., Āp.Śr., Vaik.Śr., Ś.B. and Kāṭ.Śr.), stomaḥbhāgā⁴ (29 in the T.S.B., Ś.B., 17 in Vaik. Śr.), nakasad⁵ (5 in the Āp.Śr., Vaik.Śr. and Ś.B.), pañcacakādia⁶ (5 in the T.S.B., Āp.Śr., Vaik. Śr., Ś.B. and Kāṭ.Śr.), vikarni,⁷ chandobhidhā⁸ (8 in the Āp. Śr.), kṛttikā⁹ (7 in the Āp.Śr.), maṇḍaleśṭakā,¹⁰ viśvajyotis.¹¹

*Only those numbers have been specified within brackets which have been indicated as more than one.

1. T. S. IV. 3.12; K. S. XVII. 6; M. S. II. 8.7; V. S. XV. 1; T. S. B. V. 3.5; K. S. B. XXI. 2; M. S. B. III. 2.10; Ś. B. VIII. 5.1.4-9; Baud. Śr. X. 45; Āp. Śr. XVII. 3.2; Vaik. Śr. XXX/XIX. 4; Kāṭ. Śr. XVII. 229.
2. T. S. IV. 4.2; K. S. XVII. 10; M. S. II. 8.12; V. S. XV. 63; T. S. B. V. 3.7; K. S. B. XXI. 2; M. S. B. III. 3.1; Ś. B. VIII. 7.3.9; Baud. Śr. X. 44; Āp. Śr. XVII. 3.8; Vaik. Śr. XXX/XIX. 4; Sat. Śr. XII. 1.43; Kāṭ. Śr. XVII. 261.
3. T. S. IV. 3.12; K. S. XVII. 6; M. S. II. 8.7; V. S. XV. 4; T. S. B. V. 3.5; K. S. B. XXI. 2; M. S. B. III. 2.10; Ś. B. VIII. 5.1.17; Baud. Śr. X. 45; Āp. Śr. XVII. 3.4; Vaik. Śr. XXX/XIX. 4; Sat. Śr. XII. 1.31; Kāṭ. Śr. XVII. 228.
4. T. S. IV. 4.1; K. S. XVII. 7; M. S. II. 8.8; V. S. XV. 6; T. S. B. V. 3.6; K. S. B. XXI. 2; M. S. B. III. 2.10; Ś. B. VIII. 5.4.8; Baud. Śr. X. 45; Vaik. Śr. XXX/XIX. 4; Sat. Śr. XII. 1.31; Kāṭ. Śr. XVII. 229.
5. T. S. IV. 4.2; K. S. XVII. 8; M. S. II. 8.9; V. S. XV. 10; T. S. B. V. 3.7; K. S. B. XXI. 2; M. S. B. III. 3.1; Ś. B. VIII. 6.1.5-9; Baud. Śr. X. 45; Āp. Śr. XVII. 3.6; Vaik. Śr. XXX/XIX. 4; Sat. Śr. XII. 1.33; Kāṭ. Śr. XVII. 236.
6. T. S. IV. 4.2; K. S. XVII. 9; M. S. II. 8.10; V. S. XV. 15; T. S. B. V. 3.7; K. S. B. XXI. 2; M. S. B. III. 3.1; Ś. B. VIII. 6.1.11; Baud. Śr. X. 45; Āp. Śr. XVII. 3.7; Vaik. Śr. XXX/XIX. 4; Kāṭ. Śr. XVII. 237.
7. T. S. IV. 4.2; K. S. XVII. 10; M. S. II. 8.12; V. S. XV. 62; T. S. B. V. 3.7; K. S. B. XXI. 2; M. S. B. III. 3.1; Ś. B. VIII. 7.3.9; Āp. Śr. XVII. 3.9; Vaik. Śr. XXX/XIX. 4; Sat. Śr. XII. 1.43; Kāṭ. Śr. XVII. 261.
8. T. S. IV. 4.4; M. S. II. 13.7; V. S. XV. 20; T. S. B. V. 3.8; K. S. B. XXI. 4; M. S. B. III. 3.2; Ś. B. VIII. 7.1.2; Kāṭ. Śr. XVII. 240.
9. T. S. IV. 4.5; T. S. B. V. 3.9; Baud. Śr. X. 45; Āp. Śr. XVII. 5.4; Vaik. Śr. XXX/XIX. 5; Sat. Śr. XII. 2.2.
10. T. S. IV. 4.5; T. S. B. V. 3.9; Āp. Śr. XVII. 4.2; Vaik. Śr. XXX/XIX. 4.
11. T. S. IV. 4.6; M. S. II. 8.13; V. S. XV. 58; T. S. B. V. 3.9; Ś. B. VIII. 7.1.9; Baud. Śr. X. 44; Āp. Śr. XVII. 4.4; Vaik. Śr. XXX/XIX. 4; Kāṭ. Śr. XVII. 259.
Excavations at Kaušambi

vrśītāni² (5 in the Āp. Šr. and Vaik. Šr.), saṃiyāni² (2 in the Baud. Šr., Āp. Šr. and Vaik. Šr.), adityēstakā,³ ghṛteṣṭakā⁵ (5 in the Vaik. Šr.), yaśodā⁵ (5 in the Āp. Šr.), bhūyāskṛt⁶ (5 in the Āp. Šr. and Vaik. Šr.), agnirūpiṇī⁷ (5 in the Āp. Šr.), āyuṣyā⁸ (5 in the Āp. Šr.), agniḥdyā,⁹ indrataṇvā¹⁰ (22 in the Āp. Šr. and Vaik. Šr.), yaṉātanvā¹¹ (33 in the Āp. Šr. and Vaik. Šr.), jyotismati¹² (12 in the Āp. Šr. and Vaik. Šr.), naksatreṣṭakā¹³, rtavyā¹⁴ (2 in the Baud. Šr., Āp. Šr. and Š.B.), chandasyā¹⁵ (30 in the Š.B. and 6 in the Kāt. Šr.; they may be the same as the chaṇḍobhiṇḍā of the Kṛṣṇa School), bhūteṣṭakā,¹⁶ aiyāni,¹⁷ rāṣṭāḥṛt,¹⁸ paurṇāmāsi,¹⁹

1. T. S. IV. 4.6; M. S. II. 8.13; T. S. B. V. 3.10; K. S. B. XXII. 6; M. S. B. III. 3.2; Baud. Šr. X. 45; Vaik. Šr. XXX/XIX. 5; Sat. Šr. XII. 2.3.
2. T. S. IV. 4.6; M. S. II. 8.13; T. S. B. V. 3.10; K. S. B. XXII. 6; M. S. B. III. 3.2; Baud. Šr. X. 44; Āp. Šr. XVII. 4.6; Vaik. Šr. XXX/XIX. 4; Sat. Šr. XII. 1.35.
3. T. S. IV. 4.6; M. S. II. 8.13; T. S. B. V. 3.10; K. S. B. XXII. 6; M. S. B. III. 3.2; Āp. Šr. XVII. 5.6; Vaik. Šr. XXX/XIX. 5; Sat. Šr. XII. 2.4.
4. T. S. IV. 4.6; M. S. II. 8.13; T. S. B. V. 3.10; K. S. B. XXII. 6; M. S. B. III. 3.2; Baud. Šr. X. 45; Āp. Šr. XVII. 5.8; Vaik. Šr. XXX/XIX. 5; Sat. Šr. XII. 2.5.
5. T. S. IV. 4.6; T. S. B. V. 3.10; K. S. B. XXII. 6; M. S. B. III. 3.2; Baud. Šr. X. 49; Āp. Šr. XVII. 5.10; Vaik. Šr. XXX/XIX. 5; Sat. Šr. XII. 2.6.
6. T. S. IV. 4.7; M. S. II. 13.12,18; T. S. B. V. 3.11; M. S. B. III. 3.2; Baud. Šr. X. 45; Āp. Šr. XVII. 5.10; Vaik. Šr. XXX/XIX. 5; Sat. Šr. XII. 2.7.
7. T. S. IV. 4.7; M. S. II. 13.12,18; T. S. B. V. 3.11; K. S. B. XXII. 6; M. S. B. III. 3.2; Āp. Šr. XVII. 5.11; Sat. Šr. XII. 2.10.
8. T. S. IV. 4.7; M. S. II. 13.12,18; T. S. B. V. 3.11; K. S. B. XXII. 6; M. S. B. III. 3.2; Baud. Šr. X. 45; Āp. Šr. XVII. 5.13; Sat. Šr. XII. 2.10.
9. T. S. IV. 4.7; M. S. II. 13.12,18; T. S. B. V. 3.11; K. S. B. XXII. 6; M. S. B. III. 3.2; Āp. Šr. XVII. 5.14; Sat. Šr. XII. 2.11.
10. T. S. IV. 4.8; T. S. B. V. 4.1; K. S. B. XXII. 6; Baud. Šr. X. 46; Āp. Šr. XVII. 6.3; Vaik. Šr. XXX/XIX. 5; Sat. Šr. XII. 2.13.
11. T. S. IV. 4.9; T. S. B. V. 4.1; K. S. B. XXII. 6; Baud. Šr. X. 46; Āp. Šr. XVII. 6.3; Vaik. Šr. XXX/XIX. 5; Sat. Šr. XII. 2.15.
12. T. S. IV. 4.10; M. S. II. 13.20; T. S. B. V. 4.1; K. S. B. XXII. 6; M. S. B. III. 3.2; Baud. Šr. X. 46; Āp. Šr. XVII. 6.4; Vaik. Šr. XXX/XIX. 5; Sat. Šr. XII. 2.15.
13. T. S. IV. 4.10; M. S. II. 13.20; T. S. B. V. 4.1; K. S. B. XXII. 6; M. S. B. III. 3.3; Baud. Šr. X. 46; Āp. Šr. XVII. 6.5; Vaik. Šr. XXX/XIX. 5; Sat. Šr. XII. 2.18.
14. T. S. IV. 4.11; M. S. II. 8.12; V. S. XV. 7; T. S. B. V. 4.2; K. S. B. XXII. 6; M. S. B. III. 3.4; Š. B. VIII. 7.19; Baud. Šr. X. 46; Āp. Šr. XVII. 4.5; Sat. Šr. XII. 2.12; Kāt. Šr. XVII. 238.
15. T. S. IV. 4.4; M. S. II. 13.7, 8; V. S. XV. 20; T. S. B. V. 3.8; K. S. B. XXI. 4; M. S. B. III. 3.2; Š. B. VIII. 7.12; Kāt. Šr. XVII. 240.
16. Baud. Šr. X. 46.
17. Ibid., X. 46.
18. Ibid., X. 46.
19. Ibid., X. 46.
lokampṛṇā, hiranyeṣṭakā, retaḥsik, jīmūta (5 in the Āp. Śr., Vaik.Śr. and Sat. Śr.),

In all the texts of the Krṣṇa School, we find a large number of bricks, the maximum being in the Āp.Śr. where we come across as many as twenty-eight brick-names. In the Śaṁhitās and Brāhmaṇas of this school, there is uniformity in the order of bricks but not in the Sūtras. On the other hand, there are only eleven names of bricks in the Śukla School which occur in a uniform order.

The bricks which are common to the Śaṁhitās, Brāhmaṇas and Sūtras of both the schools are asapaṭṇā, svayamāṭṇā, viroja, stomabhāgā (except in the Āp.Śr.), pāṇacūḍā, nākasad, vikarnī (except in Baudhāyana), rtaṃśa (except in Vaikhānasa) and viśvajyotis.

Chandobhidhā occurs in all the Śaṁhitās and Brāhmaṇas of the Krṣṇa School, but it has been dropped in the Sūtras of that school. In the Śukla School, however, this brick continues throughout under a similar name—chandasyā. Lokampṛṇā occurs throughout in the texts of the Śukla School and under their influence Baudhāyana accepts this name. The remaining bricks are confined to the Krṣṇa School only. Among the Sūtrakāras, we find a marked tendency to coin new names of bricks. Thus Baudhāyana introduces bhūteṣṭakā, ajyāni, rāṣṭrabhṛt and paunamāśi, and Āpastamba further prescribes hiranyeṣṭakā, retaḥsik, jīmūta, draviṇodā and upaśīvarī.

We find some changes in the number of bricks also; for instance, the T.S.B. prescribes only 12 viroja bricks, but the Baud.Śr., Āp.Śr. and Vaik.Śr. raise the number to 40. Stomabhāgā bricks are 29 in the T.S.B. but only 7 in the Vaik.Śr. In the T.S.B. we find reference to 1 jyoṭismati, 1 yajñatala and

1. V.S. XV. 59; Ś.B. VIII. 7. 1. 2; Kāt. Śr. XVII. 260.
2. Āp. Śr. XVII. 4. 1; Vaik. Śr. XXX/XIX. 4.
3. Āp. Śr. XVII. 4. 7; Vaik. Śr. XXX/XIX. 5.
4. Āp. Śr. XVII. 5. 3; Vaik. Śr. XXX/XIX. 5; Sat. Śr. XII. 2. 17.
5. Āp. Śr. XVII. 5. 12; Sat. Śr. XII. 2. 9.
6. Āp. Śr. XVII. 5. 16.
7. Supra, p. 183, 184.
8. Ibid.
9. Ibid.
10. Ibid.
1 _indratāvā_, but in the Āp. Śr. and Vaik. Śr. their numbers are raised to 12, 33 and 22 respectively.¹

In the Śukla School also Kātyāyana reduces the number of _chandasyās_² from 30 (in the Ś.B.) to 6.

**Placing of Bricks**

Four _asapatnā_³ bricks are laid down to the left of the four ends of the spines. The space of one or half foot is left between each brick and the respective spine. The line-marks of each brick run parallel to the spine. The fifth _asapatnā_ brick is laid down at a distance of one cubit to the north of the southern one. The 40 _chandasyā_ or _virāja_⁴ bricks are laid down at the end of the spines, 10 in each quarter. The central portion⁶ of the fifth layer symbolically represents the firmament. A circle round the centre is formed by a continuous ring of 29 _stomabhāgās_. Within this circle, 5 _nākasad_ bricks are placed,⁷ 1 on the northern and 1 on the western spine; 2 half-bricks on the southern spine and 1 full brick on the eastern side in the second place, north of the spine. One _paṅcaćatā_ is placed on each _nākasad_ brick. Of the two sets of 3 _chandasyā_ bricks, each falls in front of the western _nākasad_, only 1 brick of each set falling on the spine. One set of 3 such bricks is similarly laid down within the circle on the eastern side (so as to leave a space of 1 _visvajyotis_ and the 2 _ṛtavās_ in front). The remaining space in the centre is now filled up by the Gārhapatya hearth which consists of 8 bricks. Then a second layer of 8 bricks corresponding to this is laid which is called _punāsciti_.⁸ Then two _ṛtavās_ are laid down within the ring touching the eastern bricks of the circle; the _visvajyotis_ brick is placed immediately west of them. The available space of the layer is then filled up with the _lokampṛṇā_ and loose earth is scattered on it. Lastly, _svayamātrṇā_ is placed in the centre and _vikarni_, immediately north of it.⁹

---

1. Ibid.
2. Supra, p. 184.
4. Ś.B. VIII. 5.1. 4-9.
9. Ś.B. VIII. 7.3.11 ff.
Significance of some Special Bricks

The placing of the asapatanā bricks is associated with the removal of evils and adversaries. The virāja bricks have been associated with light. These are also called chandasyās which are connected with food. The placing of the nākasad bricks enables the sacrificer to win heaven. The chandasyās are as usual compared with cattle. The ātasya bricks are identified with seasons and nobility. Other bricks represent peasantry. Thus the nobility is placed among the peasantry as the eater. The viśvajyotis has been compared with the Sun and progeny. The stombhāga bricks are identified with the heavenly world. The pañc-aciḍā bricks are characterised with five knobs (cūḍā). The vikarnā brick represents Vāyu and the svayamātraṇā, the sky and the head of Prajāpati.

Reference to Bones

The chandasyā bricks are identified with cattle and with heads placed on the forepart of the altar. These bricks are placed in the range of the retaḥsik bricks which are, as before, identified with ribs. The asapatanā bricks are identified with arms.

We also find a general view of the different layers of the body of the altar with reference to the various parts of the body and bones.

The first layer is conceived as the legs and the downward vital air, the filling of the soil is flesh. We find reference to the term asthiṣṭakā in this conne-
ction, which means the complete identification of bricks and bones and which thus indicates that bones also could be placed as īṣṭakās. The second layer is that part of the body which is above the legs and below the waist, and the filling of the soil is flesh. The third layer is the waist, and the fourth, that part of the body which is above the waist and below the neck. The fifth layer is the neck, the sixth the head and the seventh the vital airs.

The Śatarudriya and other Ceremonies

The first solemn ceremony which is performed on the completed fire altar is the Śatarudriya consisting of 425 oblations to Rudra, the god representing the dreadful aspects of life and nature. Appropriate formulas are addressed to the various forms of this terrible god, Rudra, Bhava, Paśupati, Nilagrīva, Śarva etc. and his associates for the appeasement of their wrath. Rudra, who is the hundred-headed god, is conceived here as the chief (क्षत्रा) and those others originating from the drops are regarded as peasants (clansmen).

The section, comprising the Śatarudriya, is mainly addressed to a single deity, Rudra; for, it is him the sacrificer thereby gratifies. Offerings of wild sesamum seeds and gavedhuka flower by means of an arka-leaf are made. The sacrificer makes offering on three enclosing stones. Then libations of the unstringing formulas are offered to Rudra so that his bow may be unstrung and it may not injure any one. The fire altar is then sprinkled by the Agnidhra with water on every side, which symbolises the flowing of ocean round the worlds. A stone is thrown outside the fire altar in the south-western direction in the region of Nirṛti, which symbolises the putting out of pain. After taking possession of the bricks as milch-cows, the sacrificer draws a frog, a lotus-flower and a bamboo-shoot across the central part of the altar and then the Adhvaryu sings sāman round it. On the day of preparation for the Soma sacrifices, libations are offered on the svayamāṭṛī, the altar is sprinkled with sour curd, honey and ghee, and the pravargya ceremony is performed. The leading forward of Agni to the altar involves a number of ceremonies including the putting of legs on the Āhavanīya fire and the offering of oblations thereon.

1. मांसे पुरीष यत्रवर्गमां चिति पुरीषयः प्रचायािघातरक्ष्य तदर्वत्तमोऽध्यीः: संसाययति...Ś.B. VIII. 7. 4. 19.
2. Ś.B. VIII. 7.4. 12 ff.
3. T.S.B. V. 4.3 ff; Ś.B. IX. 1 ff.
This is followed by the installation and consecration (abhiṣeka) of Agni which includes offering of cakes to Vaiśvānara and Maruts, and Vasordhārā or shower of wealth, consisting of uninterrupted series of 401 oblations to Agni, through which the sacrificer is supposed to acquire all the powers of Rudra; this rite is intended as the consecration of Agni. The other important rites in this connection are Ardhendra and Graha oblations, Kalpa, Vājaprasaviya and Pārtha libations, consecration of the sacrificer and Rāṣṭrabhṛt or realm-sustaining oblations. After this the preparatory rites of the Soma sacrifice are performed which include the building of the Dhiṣṭyā hearths, the Agniṣṭomiya (an animal sacrifice), the oblations to regions and the Paśupuroḍāsa offering. Next comes the Sutyā or the day of the Soma sacrifice. A number of ceremonies, beginning with the Agniyoga (yoking of the fire altar) and ending with an offering to Mītra-Varuṇa and the recitation of propitiatory hymns to Indra and Agni, are performed.
CHAPTER TEN

THE PURUŚAMEDHA

The Meaning and Nature of the Puruśamedha

The Puruśamedha, a variety of the Soma sacrifice, is so called because it involves the slaughter of men as sacrificial victims. Just as a horse is slaughtered in the Asvamedha, similarly human victims are killed in the Puruśamedha.

The Puruśamedha is a five-day sacrifice. The Ś. B.¹, however, states that it may be extended for 40 days. In its performance the procedure of Asvamedha is followed. The evidence of the Āp. Śr. and Kāt. Śr. reveals that this sacrifice can be performed only by a Brāhmaṇa or a Kṣatriya. The Sat. Śr.¹ lays down that it should be performed by a ruler or a Brāhmaṇa.

Significance and Object

The Ś. B.⁴ states that, having performed the Puruśamedha, Puruṣa Nārāyaṇa surpassed all beings in virtues and excellence. Similarly, he, who performs this sacrifice, surpasses all beings and obtains everything. The Puruśamedha

---

1. यद्दिष्टमेववान्नुष्ठानातिधम्वे तस्मात् पुरुषमेव: | Ś. B. XIII. 6. 2. 1.
2. आद्वेषस्य मथयम पञ्चामहः | तस्मिवात्मे मथयमात्महे | पशुवंस्य मथयम पञ्चामहः | तस्मिन्नुष्ठानात् | Āp. Śr. XX. 25. 10, 11; Also Sat. Śr. XIV. 6. 21, 22.
4. Ś. B. XIII. 6.1.2.
5. स्वेदमात्वेश्वरस्वम् | Śāṅk. Śr. XVI. 10. 2; Cf. Sat. Śr. XIV. 6.2.; पुरुषमेवः | Vait. Śr. VII. 37.10.
6. ब्राह्मणो राजपत्रो व येति | Āp. Śr. XX. 24.2.; ब्राह्मणराजपत्रो | Kāt. Śr. XXI. 2.
7. रज्ज ब्राह्मणो वा | Sat. Śr. XIV. 6.1.
8. Ś. B. XIII. 6.1.1.
is everything. In the Šāṅk. Śr.¹ we find that Prajāpati obtained by this sacrifice that which he could not do by the Āsvamedha. According to the Sat. Śr.² also, the object of this sacrifice is to excel others and to obtain independence and political supremacy.

In the Gop. B.³ we find the gradation of the sacrifices including the Puruṣamedha from the point of view of the political status obtained by their performance. Thus it has been stated that by performing the Rājasūya, Vājapeya, Āsvamedha, Puruṣamedha and Sarvamedha, Prajāpati obtained (won) the status of rājā, sarmāt, svarāt, virāt and svarāt respectively.

**Main Constituents of the Puruṣamedha**

This sacrifice has 23 ṅāksās, 12 upasads and 5 sutās (Soma days).⁴ The first day of it is the Agniṣṭoma, the second an Ukthya, the third an Atirātra, the fourth an Ukthya and the fifth an Agniṣṭoma.⁵ The central Atirātra is the chief rite and the main victims of the Puruṣamedha are sacrificed on this day.⁶

**The Preliminary Rites**

In the Šāṅk. Śr. and Vait. Śr., we get details regarding the preliminary rites which, to some extent, resemble those in the case of the Āsvamedha. But there are certain additions also. First of all, offerings are made to Agnikāma (desire), Agnidātr (the giver) and Agni Pathikṛt (the path-maker).⁷ Both these texts

---

1. प्रजापतिरस्वभोजनेष्वा पुरुषभोजनस्य | तथ्य यदनाज्जृतम्भोजनस्ये तयां गृहविषयतः। Śāṅk.Śr. XVI. 10.1.
2. यो: कामे तपस्विनः सर्वो खलो ज्ञात्यं सत्यं स्वारोज्ज्ञादिकाः। एतेन यज्ञे। Sat.Śr. XIV. 6.1; also Āp. Śr. XX. 24.3. (वर्णो धर्मवेषभूते।)
3. राजसूयेन्द्र्यत्स राजेन्द्र्यत्स नामाभिः...वाजपेयेन्द्र्यत्स संराज्ञिणिः संराज्ञिणिः...पुरुषभोजनेन्द्र्यत्स नामाभिः...
4. श्र. XIII. 1.6.2; Cf. पुरुषभोजनस्यचित्तिकोणिधिमाणम्। Kāt.Śr. XXI. 1. Cf. धा्यविधातिः।
5. श्र. XIII. 6.1.8; Cf. अमिवानावासस्यांत्यविरङ्कः उक्तं उक्तं। Kāt.Śr. XXI. 3. Cf. अमिवानावासस्यांत्यविरङ्कः प्रक्रमेऽ|भवविधातिः।
6. Sat. Śr., loc. cit.
7. Šāṅk. Śr. XVI. 10. 4-8; Vait. Śr. VII. 37.12.
lay down that a Brāhmaṇa or a Kṣatriya should be purchased\(^{1}\) for 1000 cows and 100 horses for the purpose of sacrifice. The Vait. Śr. gives additional information regarding the purchase of the victims. It lays down that the sacrificer should publicly proclaim that all that are subject to him should assemble together.\(^{2}\) Then he should announce, ‘To whom shall I give a thousand (cows) and a hundred horses, to be the property of his relatives\(^{3}\)? Through whom shall I gain my object?\(^{4}\)’ If some one offers himself, it is further announced that the transaction is completed.\(^{5}\) In case no body comes forward, the nearest enemy is conquered and caught as victim for this sacrifice.\(^{6}\) The fixed price is given to the relatives of the victim’ and it is further announced that if the victim’s wife is to cause any obstacle in this matter, her entire property would be seized and the woman, if not a Brāhmaṇi, would be put to death.\(^{7}\) After being bathed and adorned,\(^{8}\) the victim is set free for a year.\(^{9}\) He is not to commit any breach of chastity.\(^{10}\) For a year, offerings to Anumati (approval), Pathyāsvasti and Aditi are made.\(^{11}\) Śāṅk. Śr. further lays down in this connection that the three daily oblations to Savitṛ should be performed in the reverse order.\(^{12}\)

At the end of the year, according to the evidence of the Vait. Śr.,\(^{13}\) an animal offering is made to Indra-Puṣan.

In the Śāṅk. Śr.,\(^{14}\) we get details regarding the recitation of 10 naraśaṁsas

---

1. ब्राह्मण श्रवण वा सहस्रेण शताश्चेनानामर्यस्य etc. Sāṅk.Śr. XVI. 10.9; कस्मस सहस्रेण शताश्चेनानामर्यस्य न जातिकां स्वतः।
2. यदि ब्राह्मण: श्रवणार्यस्य वा शताश्चेनानामर्यस्य न जातिकां स्वतः। Vait. Śr. VII. 37. 14, 15.
3. यदि ब्राह्मण: श्रवणार्यस्य वा शताश्चेनानामर्यस्य न जातिकां स्वतः। Vait. Śr. VII. 37.13.
4. Supra, fn. 1.
6. Ibíd. VII. 37.15 (यदि ब्राह्मण: श्रवणार्यस्य वा शताश्चेनानामर्यस्य न जातिकां स्वतः।
7. न केवल विषयको न जातिकां स्वतः विषयको न जातिकां स्वतः। ibid. VII. 37.16.
8. तस्मार्यस्य न जातिकां स्वतः। ibid. VII. 37.17.
9. यद्यवर्तमाने वाचवणे वस्तुवर्तमाने वाचवणे। Vait. Śr. VI. 37.18.
10. तस्मार्यस्य न जातिकां स्वतः। ibid. VII. 37.19. (The priest recites the hymns A.V. XIX. 6; X. 2-20)
11. संवर्तीस्यक्षरस्य श्रवणार्यस्य etc. Vait. Śr. VII. 37.20 also 21.
12. श्रवणार्यस्य श्रवणार्यस्य स्वस्ततः। Vait. Śr. XVI. 10. 9.
13. श्रवणार्यस्य श्रवणार्यस्य स्वस्ततः। Vait. Śr. XVI. 10. 9.
14. श्रवणार्यस्य श्रवणार्यस्य स्वस्ततः। Vait. Śr. VII. 37. 21.
15. Sāṅk. Śr. XVI. 11.
including those about Śunahśepa, Kāśivat and others. The recital of the Śunahśepa legend is significant in this connection for it gives the indication of a human sacrifice.

The Main Rites of the Sacrifice

According to the Ś.B., Kād.Śr., Āp. Śr. and Sat. Śr., the number of yūpas required for the sacrifice should be 11. But the Śāṅk. Śr. prescribes 25 yūpas each of which should be 25 aratnis (cubits) long. The same text lays down that there should be 10 of bīka wood, 12 of khadira wood, and one of rajjudāla vāsārāla (the stake which stands opposite the Āhavaniya fire). In the Vait. Śr., however, we find reference only to the Viśākha yūpa.

The first important rite, according to the Ś.B., is performed on the Upavasathā day. On this day, 11 victims, sacred to Agni and Soma, are sacrificed at 11 stakes. The evidence of Kātyāyana, Āpastamba and Satyāsādha also leads to the same conclusion. The Śāṅk. Śr., however, lays down that the number of victims should be 25. The Ś.B. further prescribes that on the svāyā days, there should be the Savāniya victims of the set of 11 stakes.

The most important sacrifice is performed on the third day which is known as Atūrātra. The distribution of human victims over the 11 stakes, according to the Ś.B., should be as follows:

1. Ś.B. XIII. 6.1.6.
2. पूर्वकाशियोऽधि Kād. Śr. XXI. 4.
3. Āp. Śr. XX. 24.4.
4. Sat. Śr. XIV. 6.3.
5. पञ्चविकाशियोऽधि Śāṅk. Śr. XVI. 12.2.
6. Ibid, XVI. 12.3-5.
7. Vait. Śr. VII. 37.9.
8. एकाकाशियोऽधि Ś.B. XIII. 6.1.4. पुष्पाकाशियोऽधि etc. Ibid.
10. एकाकाशियोऽधि Kād.Śr. XX. 24.4.
11. Sat. Śr. XIV. 6.3.
12. पञ्चविकाशियोऽधि Śāṅk. Śr. XVI. 12.6.
13. एकाकाशियोऽधि Ś.B. XIII. 6.1.5.
14. आगामितिरन्त...मन्ये...Ś.B. XIII. 6.1.9.
15. Ibid, XIII. 6.2. 5-8.
The first 48 victims are tied to the central stake. According to the Kāṭ. Śr., this is the agniśṭha yūpa. Then 11 victims are tied to each of the remaining 10 yūpas. Lastly, 8 victims, sacred to Prajāpati, are taken for sacrifice. Thus, the total number comes to 166. In the V.S.,\(^2\) however, we find the enumeration of 184 victims. According to Mahādhara,\(^3\) out of these additional victims, 14 are dedicated to various deities and the remaining are described\(^4\) in the same way as the 8 victims sacred to Prajāpati, mentioned above, who should belong neither to the Śūdra nor the Brāhmaṇa caste. According to the Kāṭ. Śr.,\(^5\) they are to be added to the 11 victims of the second stake. The other details in Kātyāyana\(^6\) are the same as in the Ś.B.

Among the Sūstras of the Kṛṣṇa Yajurveda, only Satyāśaṛha\(^7\) gives the details about the tying of the human victims to the stakes, which are almost the same as in the Ś.B. and the Kāṭ. Śr. This text lays down that either the remaining or only 8 victims should be added to the 11 victims of the middle stake.\(^8\)

Release and Slaughter of the Human Victims on the Central Day

According to the texts\(^9\) of the Śūkla as well as the Kṛṣṇa Yajurveda, the Brāhmaṇa priest, seated to the right (south) of them, praises the men bound to the stakes by means of the Puruṣa Nārāyaṇa litany (R.V.X. 90). This establishes the link of human sacrifice with the Puruṣasūkta of the R.V.

---

1. Kāṭ.Śr. XXI. 8.
2. In the V.S. (Book XXX) the total number of victims is 184. In the T.B. (VI. 2) also we find a similar list of victims but the number is 179. Thirty names of deities and victims are in the same order in both the texts. Afterwards, there is variation in the names of deities and victims and also in their order. The T.B. uses the verb ālaṃkṛte (slaughter) for these victims but the same does not occur in the V.S. See also S.B.E., vol. XLIV, pt. V, pp. 407-8 fn.
4. According to Weber these four victims, as they occur among the previously enumerated victims, are additions in the Samhitā which have not been recognised by the Brāhmaṇa (S.B.E., vol. XLIV, pt. V, p. 408 fn.)
5. तिलीमाणि बेनान्न। Kāṭ. Śr. XXI. 10.
7. तेषांत्यथवर्षार्जनं मध्यम उपास्तोषति Sat. Śr. XIV. 6.6. एकादशकाल्काशतर्याधिकाष्टमायमेंटवाय इव इव, XIV. 6.7.
8. Ibid, XIV. 6.7.
9. Ś.B. XIII. 62.12; नित्यव्यक्तं ब्रह्मामित्तिः होतुवदव्यक्तं “सहवस्तार्यति।” Kāṭ. Śr. XXI. 11; Sat. Śr. XIV. 6.8.
At this stage the human victims, according to the Ś.B.¹, have the fire carried round them but they are not yet slaughtered. Then we find the intervention of a divine voice saying² ‘Puruṣa, do not perform the saṃsthāpana ceremony with these victims: if thou wert to do so, man would eat man’.

Commenting on ‘mā santiṣṭhiḥpito,’ occurring in this passage, Harivāmin³ states that before paryagnikaraṇa the human victims are neither slaughtered nor taken in the northern direction. This shows the significance of paryagnikaraṇa. The commentator says that, if these rites are performed before paryagnikaraṇa, man will start eating man in this world. The object of taking some human victims in the northern direction is clear from the Āp. Śr. and Sat. Śr., where it is mentioned that only the paryagnikṛta victims are taken in this direction for release. The Ś.B.⁴ further states that only after paryagnikaraṇa some victims are released and the remaining 11 victims⁵ who are non-paryagnikṛta are slaughtered.

Eggeling⁶ translates the term ‘saṃsthāpayati’ here as ‘concludes’. Elsewhere he takes it to mean ‘to consummate’⁷a and ‘to slay’⁷b. But following the ritualistic tradition the commentator rightly interprets it as actual slaughter.⁸ Sāyana⁹a also explains the term ‘saṃsthāpana’ as ‘saṃghāpanam’ or slaughter.

Of all the ritual texts, Kāṭ. Śr. is not very clear about the ceremony of the carrying of fire, release of victims and the final saṃsthāpana. It has to be interpreted in the light of the Ś.B. and the corresponding texts like the Āp. Śr.

---

1. सन्त्रभिद्धता: पाणी बामपुरसंशंका, Ś.B. XIII. 6. 2. 12.
2. अथ हैनस्मपथावद। पृष्ठ या संतिष्ठितेऽवत्र संस्थापिधावे पुत्रवाचुः पुरुषवत्स्त्वतीति तान्नथंशान्तल्लिङ्ग्वदयुज्यते- इत्यावंतःसुलोक्ततिंशाः। काम्यं। | Ibid, XIII. 6. 2. 13.
3. ऐततु पुरुषवाचुः मा संतिष्ठितः उदाहरीविदिकोपपित् सुलोक्ततिंशाः। काम्यं। | Ibid, XIII. 6. 2. 13.
4. सन्त्रभिद्धता: समविधावे। हरिस्वामिन on Ś.B. XIII. 6.2.13.
5. एकाकाविधिनं: संस्थापिधा। | Ibid, XIII. 6.2.15.
7. एकाकाविधिनं: पाणी: संस्थापिधा। | Ibid, XIII. 6.2.15.
7a. Sāyana in Ś.B. III. 7. 2. 8.
and Sat. Sr.\(^1\) of the Krishna School. According to the Kāt. Sr.\(^2\), 48 victims are tied to the *agnīṣṭha yūpa* and 11 victims to each of the remaining 10 *yūpas*. The remaining victims are then to be added to the second *yūpa*. Then Sūtra XXI, 12 refers to the release of *Brāhmaṇādīn*; this expression may refer either to the *Brāhmaṇādīn* (XXI. 7) or to victims also mentioned in sūtras XXI. 8 and 9, except the rest (*seṣam*) who are added to the second post and appear to have been slaughtered (XXI. 10). The number of victims to be sacrificed will be 136 or 26 only according to either of the two alternative interpretations respectively.

In the Āp. Sr.\(^4\) and Sat. Sr.\(^5\) of the Krishna Yajurveda School, we find almost the same procedure as in the Ś.B. It has been laid down that the *panyagnikṛta* victims should be taken in the northern direction and released. Then after some rites, the remaining human victims are slaughtered. According to Aśvatthaṇa, those slaughtered are two sets of eleven. But Satyāśāṅha follows the Ś.B. here, and lays down that they are one set of eleven only.

The conclusion, therefore, emerges that, according to the Ś.B., Āp. Sr. and Sat. Sr., the *panyagnikṛta* victims or those round whom the fire is carried are released and the rest are actually slaughtered. This is further confirmed by the procedure followed in the Asvamedha, the rites of which, as already pointed out, correspond to those of the Puruṣāmedha. In the Asvamedha,\(^6\) the *panyagnikṛta* animals are released and then takes place the slaughter of the horse. Thus it may safely be concluded that after the release of the *panyagnikṛta* victims, the slaughter of the other remaining human victims must have formed part of the Puruṣāmedha procedure. This has obviously been generally overlooked.

---

1. Infra, fns. 4, 5.
3. षट्काखलानुपातक महागृहदीर्घः। Ibid, XXI. 7.
4. पति मुक्तः मुक्तानुपास्य कृत तद्देवता अहुःस्वेतः द्वैप्तेकासिणीः संस्थापयितः (नि)। Āp. Sr. XX. 24. 11.
5. पति मुक्तः मुक्तानुपास्य कृत तद्देवता अहुःविप्रुपास्य कादिकाशीः संस्थापयितः। Sat. Sr. XIV. 6.9.
6. पति मुक्तः मुक्तानुपास्य कृत तद्देवता अहुःस्वेतः द्वैप्तेकासिणीः। Sat. Sr. XIV. 9. 17.5. श्वासुदेशः श्रीविष्णुः ज्ञात काल्यान संस्थापयितः। Ibid, XX. 17.9.
Sacrifice of Eleven Barren Cows

The last round of the sacrifice consists of the immolation of 11 barren cows¹ sacred to Mitra-Varuṇa, the Viśvedevāh and Bṛhaspati, according to the Ś.B. and Sat. Śr., and to Prajāpati or Viśvedevāh, according to Āpastamba who² further lays down that the abhiṣeka in the Puruṣamedha is like that in the Aśvamedha.

The Main Rites according to Śānkhayana and Vaitāna, furnishing an undisputed Evidence of Human Sacrifice

According to Śānkhayana,³ a man, a gomṛga and a hornless he-goat are sacrificed for Prajāpati. Twenty-five victims are brought to each of the twenty-five sacrificial posts, who are to be sacrificed for the seasonal deities.⁴

The Āpri verses, ‘Agni, death etc.', are pronounced on the adorned human victim.⁵ A garment of kuṣa grass, a cloth of tripā bark and a red garment of silk threads are spread out for the victim.⁶ When he is slaughtered, the Udgāṭr sings the sāman addressed to Yama⁷ and the Hotṛ recites the Puruṣa Nārāyaṇa hymn.⁸ Then the sacrificer is healed by means of four hymns.⁹ The healing ceremony becomes necessary, for the sacrificer has caused man-slaughter in course of the sacrifice.¹⁰

The first consort of the sacrificer lies down near the slaughtered victim.¹¹

---

¹. एकादश व्यशोऽनुवर्त्यायांकले, Ś.B. XIII. 6.2.16; Āp. Śr. XX. 24.15; Sat. Śr. XIV. 6.12.
². एलिसिन्सेर्वोऽह्नद्येष्यमयासय:। Āp. Śr. XX. 24. 14.
³. पुनः गोमृगोऽक्षुरस्ते प्राजापत्यः। Śānk. Śr. XVI. 12.14.
⁵. अय्यवन्तुवृत्तावत:। Ibid, XVI. 12.18.
⁶. कष्टो यायात्यो हुः। Ibid, XVI. 12.20.
⁷. शंस्यस्य यायेऽस्य सामवेदीतः। Ibid, XVI. 12.21.
⁸. पुनः गोमृगोऽक्षुरस्ते प्राजापत्यः। Ibid, XVI. 13.1; for the hymns see ibid, XVI. 13.4.
⁹. कष्टो यायेऽस्य सामवेदीतः। Ibid, XVI. 13.3.
10. Eggeling thinks that the healing ceremony was with a view to heal the bodily infirmities of the sacrificer (S.B.E., vol. XLIIV, pt. V, introduction, p. xlv). But this view is obviously untenable.
11. संस्कारम् महिमां सूक्तिपालनः। Ibid, XVI. 13. 7.
Both of them are covered with the upper garment. Then certain rites are performed and some verses recited. This rite is analogous to the sacrificer's wife lying with the slaughtered horse in the Asvamedha. Theological discussion takes place on the sadas. After certain other ceremonies, there is a sacrifice of ten victims, fettered to a forked stake, and of another twelve for the seasons. According to Vaitāna, the third day of the sacrifice is a Mahāvrata and the human victim is bound to the post; some verses are recited on this occasion. With different verses the victim is taken to the slaughtering place in the shed of Śāmitra and then made to lie down. When the victim has been slaughtered, the Puruṣa Nārāyaṇa hymn is recited. After this, certain verses are recited with a view to heal the sacrificer. Other rites are the same as in the Asvamedha.

The Dakṣinā

According to the Ś.B., the land, other property and the people of eastern, southern, western and northern quarters of the kingdom are given to Hotṛ, Brahmā, Adhvaryu and Udgāṭ priests respectively. The Hotṛkas share this along with them. The land and property of the Brāhmaṇas are excluded. If a Brāhmaṇa performs this sacrifice, he should bestow all his property in order to obtain its complete merit.
The Śrauta Sūtras of Kātyāyana, Āpastamba and Satyāśādha lay down the same procedure and emphasise that the daksīṇā should be like that in the Aśvamedha.

Life of the Sacrificer after the Performance of the Puruṣamedha

The Ś.B. lays down that, after performing this sacrifice, the sacrificer takes up the two fires within his ownself (inhales the heat or smoke emitted by the fires), worships the Sun with the Uttara Nārāyaṇa hymn and betakes himself to the forest without looking round. If he wishes to live in the village, he should take up again the two fires, the churning sticks, worship the Sun with the hymn mentioned above and dwell at his home. Afterwards also, he should offer the sacrifices which he can afford. The Kāṭ. Śr., Ṛṣ. and Sat. Śr. also lay down similar rules.

Evidence of the Puruṣamedha in Buddhist Literature

In Buddhist literature also there are significant notices of the Puruṣamedha. The earliest reference to it is found in the Suttanipāta which is considered to be one of the oldest texts of Buddhism. Some of its portions had become prominent even in the time of Buddha, as it is quoted about a Bhikṣu that he was able to recite the last two chapters of it in the presence of the Lord in one

1. saṃsāvihatvā parśvanāse, śravasya bṛhadāṇa. Kāṭ. Śr. XXI. 14, 15.
2. vishīvākaṇe yabhrāṇānāṁ śīlū bhāvānāṁ tattvānāṁ darsāni yathābhāya. bhrāṇi yadāmaṇaḥ: saṃsāvitaḥ. Āp. Śr. XX. 24. 12, 13.
3. vishīvākālau samudrā violā<y>āḥ sūtramāḥ śīlāḥ bhāvānāṁ tattvānāṁ. Sat. Śr. XIV. 6,10,11.
4. uttaraṇādhvānaḥ viśvaḥ prabhāvāraṇaḥ prabhāvāraṇaḥ prabhāvāraṇaḥ prabhāvāraṇaḥ prabhāvāraṇaḥ prabhāvāraṇaḥ. S.B. XIII. 6. 2. 20.
5. Kāṭ. Śr. XXI. 17, 18.
7. bhāvaṃ vārāhāraḥ puṇyaṃ mārṣhavānāḥ prabhāvāraṇaḥ prabhāvāraṇaḥ prabhāvāraṇaḥ prabhāvāraṇaḥ prabhāvāraṇaḥ. Sat. Śr. XIV. 6. 13,14.
sitting. The antiquity of this text is further borne out by the fact that even the commentary on certain portions of the Suttanipātā was regarded as Buddhavacana and was included in the Tripiṭaka itself. At any rate, according to the Buddhist tradition, the entire extant Pāli Tripiṭaka was in existence in 29 B.C.

The Suttanipātā

In the Brāhmaṇadhammika Sutta,4 mentioned in the second chapter, i.e. Cullavagga, Buddha contrasts the ancient Brahmanical ideals with the Brahmanical duties and practices of his own time. The holy Brāhmaṇas of ancient times exercised self-control and, having abandoned the pleasures of the five senses, they led a life for their own welfare. They had no cattle, neither gold nor corn. Only learning was wealth and corn for them. People from various provinces and countries paid homage to them. Those Brāhmaṇas were inviolable. They offered sacrifices which did not involve the killing of cows and did not hanker after huge dakṣinās. In course of time, however, they were tempted by worldly wealth, adorned women of kings, houses divided into compartments etc. They composed hymns for sacrifice, approached king Okkāka and prevailed upon him to perform sacrifices. Then the king performed Assamedha, Purisamedha, Sammāpāsa, Vācapeyya and Niraggaḷa sacrifices. In dakṣinā he gave wealth to these Brāhmaṇas, which consisted of cattle, money, garments, adorned women etc. This gāthā is also incorporated in the Samyutta Nikāya,4 Aṅguttara Nikāya4 and Itivuttaka.7

Buddhaghosa

In the Paramatthajotikā commentary, Buddhaghosa explains the connotation of the Aśvamedha and Puruṣamedha.

1. evac. maha. ti kho apassa koso bhavati pattimuttva sosadham adikkatthamkata samaya ev saman abhijj.
2. Cullaniddesa and Mahāniddesa.
4. Sn., p. 50.
He defines Aśvamedha as that sacrifice in which horse is slaughtered. It has two main ancillary rites and requires 21 yūpas for its performance. The dakṣinā consists of the entire property excluding the land and people. Similarly, the Puruṣamedha is that sacrifice in which men are slain as victims. It has four other component parts. The dakṣinā consists of the entire wealth, as in the case of the Aśvamedha, and also land. In his Sāratthapakāsini commentary on the Sūnyutta Nikāya, Buddhaghoṣa repeats the same comments with the additional information that the term ‘medhanti’ meant ‘vadhenti’ which indicates that actual human slaughter was performed in the Puruṣamedha.

The facts, in the commentary of Buddhaghoṣa, reveal that he had a clear, correct and first-hand information of the ritual. His definitions of the Aśvamedha and Puruṣamedha are the same as in the ritual texts. The reference to 21 yūpas, in connection with the Aśvamedha, occurs in the commentary as well as in various ritual texts. Here Buddhaghoṣa states that the Aśvamedha has two main ancillary rites along with the central ceremony. The Ś.B. also lays down that the main sacrifice lasts for three days. The first Soma-day is the Agniṣṭoma. The second is the Ukhya on which the main ceremony of slaughtering the horse takes place. On the third day, a number of rites are performed and it is described as the Atirātra. So the main ceremony of horse slaughter has the two ancillary ones, performed on the first and the third day.

Similarly, the Puruṣamedha, according to Buddhaghoṣa, has four ancillary ceremonies, evidently besides the central ceremony—one Agniṣṭoma and one Ukhya preceding the Atirātra and another Agniṣṭoma and Ukhya following it. The four components of the Puruṣamedha along with the central Atirātra

1. अस्मेत्यं मेघनति निः अस्मेयो, ही परियोऽपि जितजन्वस्तः एकबोधितपुस्तः छेत्रा भूमिज्ञ दर्पस ६ आपातसिद्धिभवनस्तः यत्रस्वस्ते अधिबनन। Paramatthajotikā commentary on the Sn. vol. II, p. 321.
2. पुरिसमेत्यं मेघनति निः पुरिस्मेयो, चतुर्धि परियोऽपि जितजन्वस्तः संह भूमिया अस्मेयो वृत्तित्वदितवस्तः यत्रस्वस्ते अधिबनन। Ibid.
4. एकबोधितपुस्तः, Sānk. Sr. XVI. 3. 1.
5. Ś.B. XIII. 4. 1. 1.
6. Ś.B. XIII. 2.1. 1 ff.
7. Ś.B. XIII. 2.2.1 ff.
8. Ś.B. XIII. 3. 3. 9.
are the same as in the ritual texts. Thus Buddhaghoṣa shows a correct insight into the structural arrangements of these sacrifices. Regarding the dakṣiṇā in these sacrifices also, we find that the facts in his commentary are in conformity with those in the ritual texts. Thus the dakṣiṇā of the Puruṣamedha consists of land and all other property as prescribed in the Āp. Śr.2

The Evidence of the Khaṇḍahāla Jātaka

This Jātaka relates that Devadatta, the opponent of the Tathāgata, was the Brāhmaṇa priest of king Ekarāja of Bārāṇasi, also called Pupphavati, in his previous birth and his name was Khaṇḍahāla. He succeeded in persuading the king to offer a sacrifice involving the slaughter of his sons, other persons and animals as victims. On being asked about the way to heaven by the king, the priest replied that it could be won by the excellent merits obtained by sacrificing those who deserved not to be slain and by giving enormous gifts in that sacrifice. He further explained to the king that the latter should offer as of sacrificial victims, his sons, queens, merchants, the choicest bulls, the steeds; etc.

The commentary, while explaining this passage, further adds that princes, princesses, wives of the king, bulls, horses, elephants, each four in number, were required to be sacrificed in an enclosure. Their heads were to be severed with a sword and pieces of gold were to be thrust into their mouths (throats).

The king, intending to perform this sacrifice with a desire to obtain heaven, summoned his four sons, Candakumāra, Candāśīra, Bhaddasena and Vemānikasūra. He went out of the city and ordered a sacrificial pit to be dug and then levelled, according to the ancient Brahmanical procedure, so that the rite might not be disturbed. The persons, seized for the sacrifice, were his four sons, mentioned above, his four daughters, Upaseni, Kokilā, Muditā and Nāndā; his four queens, Vijayā, Erāvati, Kesini and Sunandā; and four merchants, Punnāmukha, Bhaddiya, Šīgāla and Vaddha, who were weeping aloud and protesting. Among the animals, there were four elephants, Abhayanka, Rājagiri, Acyuta and Varuṇadanta; four horses, Kesi, Surāmukha, Punnaka

---

1. सद्ध भूमिया अस्स्मेषं बुतिवमच्य etc. see fn. 2, supra, p. 201.
2. विि तत्त्त्वद्विि दस्तिि भमामेष दि ए.प. ए. ए. 24.12.
and Vindaka, and four bulls, Yūthapati, Anoja, Nisobha and Gavampati. Besides, a number of other animals and birds were also seized for the sacrifice which was to be performed in the morning.

Amidst loud wailings and pathetic cries, the victims were carried through the eastern gate of the city to the sacrificial ground. After the preliminary rites, the priest Khaṇḍalāla placed the prince Candakumāra on the altar with his neck bent forward. While the priest was on the point of severing the neck of the prince with a sword, the King of gods appeared in person with a blazing mass of fire and disturbed the sacrifice.

In the Vessantara Jātaka1, we find reference to the sacrifice, known as ‘pantha sakuna’, which an escort of king Vessantara intended to perform with the Brāhmaṇa jūjaka as a victim by cutting off his head and making the offering of his flesh, marrow and heart. The term sakuna means bird and thus it may be possible that this rite, involving the offering of the various parts of the human victim, may have some relation with either the Śyenaciti or the Śyenayāga. One is also reminded here of offering to pathyā-svasti,2 in connection with the Puruṣamedha sacrifice.

In these two Jātakas the preparation and levelling of the sacrificial ground, the construction of the sacrificial enclosure, the sacrifice of human and animal victims, the thrusting of gold-chips into their mouths and the facts regarding the sacrificial fees, agree closely with those in the ritual texts. They occur in the gāthā portion of the two stories, whose antiquity goes back to the early days of Buddhism.

Evidence of the Puruṣamedha in Jain Literature

In a Jain text3 there is an interesting account of a Brāhmaṇa priest Mahe-

1. तत्सः स्वाधिक्षे न दस्सामि जीवितं इत्र ब्राह्मणं। अर्थ हि ते मया तुज्जीरसिरो पात्रतित्तिविशिष्टां। ॥ सिद्धो ते वज्ज्वल्यते हर्षं खेत्यं सकलम्। प्रत्येकं मनोज्ञार्थं तुथं जगतीत्ति ब्राह्मणं। ॥ तुथं जातं मनोज्ञार्थं गत्वकालं च ब्राह्मणं। अवृत्तं प्रभासामिः छेत्यां हर्षं तव। ॥ तत्सः प्रत्येकं तुथं जातं मनोज्ञार्थं ब्राह्मणं। न च त्वं प्रभासानं भागिनं गुणं च नेपाससात। ॥ Jātaka, vol. VI, p. 527.
2. Supra, p. 192 fn. 12.
ssaradatta who used to perform Homa (Soma) sacrifice (obviously Puruṣamedha) by seizing one boy belonging to each of the four castes for the enhancement of the realm and power of his patron king Jiyasattu. The number of victims was even increased on special occasions. Thus whenever the king was attacked by an enemy, the priest caused 800 boys from each caste to be seized and sacrificed. There appears to be some exaggeration, but the fact of the performance of Puruṣamedha is evident here.

Reference to the Puruṣamedha in the non-ritualistic Hindu Texts

In the Sambhavaparva of the Mahābhārata¹, we find a detailed description of the Puru Vāmśa, starting from Daḵṣa, and a reference to the performance of ten thousand Puruṣamedha sacrifices by Ayutanāyi, a scion of that Vāmśa, who was so called because he had performed ayuta or ten thousand human sacrifices.

In the Vāyu Purāṇa², the Aśvamedha and Naramedha are compared to the waist and belly respectively of the ascetic sage Vyāsa. In the ninth Skandha of the Bhāgavata Purāṇa³ also, there is an account of the performance of a Puruṣamedha by king Harīscandra who purchased Śuṇahśepa, the second son of Ajīgarta, as a sacrificial victim, and obtained the service of the priests, Viśvāmitra, Jamadagni, Vaśiṣṭha and Ayāśya as Hota, Adhvaryu, Brahmā and Udgātā respectively. The facts regarding the purchase of the victim and the order of the priests agree with those in the ritual texts. In the fifth Skandha of the same Purāṇa, we find the condemnation of this sacrifice. It is stated that men who perform the Puruṣamedha go to hell and there they are cut into slices by the troops of vākṣasas who are no other than the victims slain in the sacrifice.⁴ In the Kathāsaritsāgara⁴ we find that the devas requested the prince of the dānavas to offer himself as a victim for the Puruṣamedha. He agreed to it and the gods cut his body into pieces for that sacrifice.

¹ M.B., Sambhavaparva, XCIV, p. 138.
² Vāyu. P., CIV, 84.
³ Bhāg. P. V. 26.31; IX. 7. 20-22.
⁴ Kathāsaritsāgara, XLVI. 3. 238, 239.
In the Cho Dinh¹ Rock inscriptions of Champa, belonging to c. 400 A.D., there is evidence of the performance of human sacrifice. Inscription no. 2 refers to a sacrifice offered by Mahārāja Bhadra Varman or one of his descendants with the address, “I shall make thee agreeable to fire, i.e. sacrifice thee.” No. 3 refers to the binding of a slave called Śiva to the sacrificial post. The reference to the victim being made agreeable to fire is in accord with the Āpī hymns, ‘Agniṁṛtyuḥ’, which are to be recited at the time of the immolation of the human victim.² It is significant to remember that the culture of South-East Asia had its root in Indian culture.

1. (1) नमो देवाय भद्रस्वामिनात्मकसादत् अन्येव त्वा जूष्ठे करिष्यामि (2) पर्मेंहरासवभीत्रस्वरमणो भावस्वामित्वात् तात् पुष्पीयो मोक्षयति। (3) पृष्ठिविष्णुदात्र काम्पसिद्धस्तु। विनो दायो बनो दायो। (Inscription Nos. 2 & 3, Majumdar, R.C. Champa; Ancient Indian Colonies in the Far East, vol. 1).
2. Supra, p. 197.
SELECT BIBLIOGRAPHY

ORIGINAL TEXTS AND TRANSLATIONS

Aitareya Brähmana (with Sāyana’s commentary). Ānandāśrama Sanskrit Granthāvaliḥ, Granthāṇīkaḥ 2, 3. 1931.
Āpastamba Śulba Sūtra (with the commentaries of Kapardivămin, Karvinda and Sundararāja). Edited by Srinivasachar, D. and Narsimhachar, S. D. Mysore, 1931.
Aśvalāyana Śrauta Sūtra. Edited by Rāmanārāyaṇa Vidyāratna. Published by J. A. S. B. Calcutta, 1874.
Baudhāyana Śrauta Sūtra. Edited by Caland, W. Calcutta, 1907.
Baudhāyana Śulba Sūtra. Edited in the Pandit. vol. 1. New Series. Benares, June 1, 1876.
Kāthakam Die Samhitā der Katha-Śākhā. Edited by Von Schroeder, L. Leipzig, 1900.
Kātyāyana Śrauta Sūtra (with the commentary of Karkāchārya). Edited by Parhak, M. M. Benares, 1908.
Kauśitaki Upāniṣad. Edited by Paṇsikar, W. L. S. Bombay, 1930.
Mahābhārata. Calcutta, 1884.
Maitrāyani Samhitā. Edited by Von Schroeder, L. Leipzig, 1881.
Pañcarātra Brāhmaṇa (Tāṇḍya Mahābrāhmaṇa with the commentary of Śāyaṇa). Edited by Ānandachandra Vedāntavāgiśa. Calcutta, 1874.
— Translated by Caland, W. Calcutta, 1931.
— Translated by Griffith, R. T. H. Benaras, 1891.
Śāṅkhāyana Śrauta Sūtra (with the commentary of Varadattasuta Ānartiya).
Edited by Hillebrandt, A. Calcutta, 1888.
— Translated by Caland, W. Nagpur.
Sātyāsāḍha Śrauta Sūtra. Edited by Shastry Kashinath. Poona, 1908.
Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa (with the commentary of Śāyaṇa and Harisvāmin).
Laxmi Venkateshwar Steam Press, Bombay, 1940.
— Edited by Weber, A. Leipzig, 1924.
Taittirīya Brāhmaṇa (with the commentary of Śāyaṇāchārya). Edited by Apte, H. N. Poona, 1898.
Harvard University Press, 1914.
— Translated by Griffith, R. T. H. Benares, 1899.
Vaikhānasa Śrauta Sūtra. Edited by Caland, W Calcutta, 1878.
Vāyu Purāṇam. Edited by Apte, H. N. (Ānandāśrama Saṁskrit Granthāvaliḥ Granthāṅkāḥ 49) 1905.
GENERAL WORKS

Agrawala, V. S. India as Known to Pāṇini. Lucknow, 1953.
Chatterji, S. K. The Origin and Development of Bengali Language. Calcutta University, 1926.
Cunningham, A. Coins of Ancient India. London, 1891.
Hillebrandt, A. Ritual-litteratur. Strassburg, 1897.
Bibliography


Piggott, S. Prehistoric India (Pelican Books) Harmondsworth, 1950.


Sen, Amulyachandra. Schools and Sects in Jain Literature. Viśva Bharati Studies No. 3.


Sircar, D. C. Select Inscriptions Bearing on Indian History and Civilization Calcutta, 1942.


Thibaut, G. The Šulva Sūtras. Calcutta, 1875.


JOURNALS

Annual Bibliography of Indian Archaeology, Kern Institute.

Ancient India : Bulletin of the Archaeological Survey of India.

Memoirs of the Archaeological Survey of India.

Bulletin of the National Institute of Sciences of India.

Indian Archaeology—A Review.

Ipek.

Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal.


Journal of the Numismatic Society of India.

Proceedings, All Ind‘a Oriental Conference.

The Pandit.

Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morgenlandischen Gesellschaft.
INDEX

Abhicāra, 104, 106, 108, 138, 147, 150, 156, 174
Ābhicārika, 108, 137, 138
Abhiseka, 189
Abhyankara, 202
Achaemenid Persia, 13
Acyuta, 202
Adhvara Karma, 107
Adhvaryu, 198
Adhvaryugāṇaḥ, 138
Aditi, 149, 153, 155, 192
Āditya, 105, 155
Ādityāṁ garbhāham, 168
Ādityeśṭakā, 184
Adze, 45, 48, 56
Age, Kali, 109
Agni, 12, 99, 110, 111, 135, 141, 142, 148, 151-153, 156, 157, 159, 167, 169, 175, 189, 193, 197
Agnicitī, 105, 108, 120, 131, 136, 138
Agnidātṛ, 191
Agnidhāraṇa, 154
Agnidhra, 188
Agnihotra. 98, 136
Agniḥṛdyā, 184
Agnikāma, 191
Agniṉikarma, 107, 109
Agniṅkārya, 109
Agniṅmitra, 19
Agni Pathikṛt, 191
Agniṅriṇiṅ, 184
Agniṅsava, 136
Agniṣṭōtya, 111, 189
Agniśṭōta Yūpa, 110, 194, 196
Agniśto, 130, 191, 201
Agni-Upādhaṇa, 154

Agni Vaiśvānara, 167
Agni-Viṣṇu, 105, 155
Agni-vyoga, 189
Agni-yogana, 107
Agni-yādheya, 136
Agrawala, V. S. 12 fn 5., 81
Āhavanīya, 103, 120, 146, 147, 161, 193
Ahichchhatrā, 64
Ahūṁ, 117
Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, 25, 47, 114, 115
Aja, 100
Ajaolma, 148, 149
Ajlīgarta, 114, 204
Ajīra, 138
Ājīvaka, 9
Ajyāni, 101, 184, 185
Āksāvyāstomīyā, 179, 180
Alajaciti, 131
Ālamagīrputra, 3, 5, 6, 13, 45, 66
Alexander’s invasion, 23
Allahabad, 8, 9, 24, 25
— University, 25
Allan, 81 fn 1, 82, 83
Altar, Bird-shaped, 89, 118, 136
Aitekar, A. S. 20 fn1., 84
Amāvasyā, 130
Amedhyā, 140
Amṛā, 61
Amṛta, 134
Anaddhā puruṣa, 146
Ānartya, Varadattasutta, 144 fn6.
Añgas, Somayāga, 130, 138
Aṅgiras, 146
Anguttara Nikāya, 200
Animal, mythical (Lanky bull), 80, 83
—one-eyed, 137
—one-horned, 137
— terracotta figurines, 74
Index

Aṅkuṣa, 93
Anoja, 203
Antelope, Skin, 156
Ant-hill, 146
Ara, 160
Aṣṭakamātrī, 153
Anumati, 99, 192
Apānabhṛtṛ, 104, 163, 164
Āpastamba, 11, 105, 119, 121, 129, 147, 149,
150, 151, 155, 156, 158, 160, 161, 163-170,
177, 180, 185, 186, 193
— śrauta sūtra, 100, 101, 107, 130, 141, 143-
145, 148, 152, 156-160, 176, 177, 179, 180,
183-186, 190, 193, 195, 196, 199
— Śulba Sūtra, 120, 132, 133, 137, 139
Apāsyā, 124, 163, 164, 166, 170, 172,
173, 174
Āpṛi hymns, 205
Āpṛi Verses, 110, 197
Āranyaka, 10
Aratni, 145, 150, 193
Aratnimātrī, 153
Arched hill, 80, 81, 82
Architecture, Harappan, 6
Ardhārāhadratīś, 158
Ardha Kākinī, 81
Ardha-Māgadhī, 8
Ardha-Vimśatika, 81
Ardhendura, 189
Arka-leaf, 188
Armakapāla, 148
Arml, 77, 93
Arrow-heads—black-stained, 47
— bone, ivory etc., 47, 48
— bud-shaped, 47, 50
— circular, 47
— double-grooved, 47, 49
— irregular rectangular cross-section, 47,
50
— socketed, 47, 49
— horn, 47
— iron, 45-47, 51
— barbed, 45, 54
— Circular cross-section, 45, 52
— Conical blade, 45, 52
— double-grooved, 45, 52, 53
— Knife-blade, 45, 52
— leaf-shaped, 45, 52
— rectangular cross-section, 45, 51
— rhombic cross-section, 45, 51
— socketed, 45, 52
— square cross-section, 45, 51
— three-bladed, 45, 54
— triangular cross-section, 45, 52
— in literature, 47
— wood, 47
Ārṣeyavatī, 182
Ārya, 115
Aryan, 9, 11, 12
— immigrants, 13
— of India, 116
— people, 115, 116
Aṣādh, 98, 103, 104, 108, 123, 124, 126, 151-
153, 162-165, 169-171
Aṣādhī Sāurāmati, 142
Āsandī, 156
Āsandīvant, 12
Aśoka pillar, 22, 25
Asapati, 83, 185, 187
Ass, 145-148
Assamedha, 200
Aṣṭādhyāyī, 109, 172
Asthīṣṭakā, 123, 187
Aśvaghoṣa, 19
Aśvamedha, 98, 115, 125, 129, 130, 136, 190,
191, 196, 198, 199, 200, 201, 204
Aśvatthī, 156
Aśvinī, 109, 124, 172-174
Atharvaveda, 47, 100, 106, 108, 109, 111,
114, 133
Atirātra, 110, 111, 191, 193, 201
Atithī, 155
Aṭkotā, 65
Ātmā, 139
Auddhbarī, 156
Avesta, 129
Āyāma, 150
Ayāsa, 204
Ayōdhyā, 10, 12
Āyusyā, 184
Ayutanāyī, 204
Axe, 45, 48, 56
Babylonia, 3
Bactrian Greeks, 14, 15, 21, 46
Bādhaka, 137, 138
Balūc, 116
Bamboo-shoot, 188
Bāna, 47
Bandhumati, 162
Bāra, 4
Basin, 63
Baudhāyana, 11, 17, 105, 129, 132, 147, 149, 150, 160, 163, 165, 170, 171, 173, 180, 185
— Śrautā Sūtra, 100, 101, 102, 109, 137, 141, 145, 146, 152, 163, 164, 166, 172, 176, 177, 179, 180, 183, 185
Beaded necklace, 76
Beaker, 62
Bhaddasena, 202
Bhaddiya, 202
Bhadravarmana, Mahārāja, 113, 205
Bhāgavata Purāṇa, 114, 204
Bhandarkar, D. R., 81 fn 2
Bhānugupta, 21 fn 2
Bhāradvāja, 166
Bhārhatu, 20, 85, 86
Bhāṭacandrikā, 133
Bhava, 188
Bhikṣu, 199
Bhir Mound, 23
Bījā, 64
Bhola Nath, 94, 95 fn.
Bhūmivati, 165
Bhūtēṣṭakā, 101, 176, 177, 185
Bhūyaskṛt, 184
Bikane, 4
Bilva, 193
Bird-shaped altar, 89, 118, 136
Black-and-Red Ware, 18, 19, 31, 39, 57, 59, 68
Boghaz-Köi Inscription, 11
Bone arrow-heads, 47, 48, 50
Bos Bubalis, 95
Bos Indicus Linnaeus, 88
Bowl, 57
Bowl-cum-basin, 57
— Grey Ware, 57
Bracelet, 77
Brahmā, 198, 204
Brahmagaṇaḥ, 138
Brahmaloka, 132
— Aitareya, 25, 47, 114, 115
Brāhmaṇadhāmmina Sutta, 200
Brāhmaṇādin, 196
Brāhmaṇa, Gopatha, 25, 191
— Jūjaka, 203
— Priest, 194, 203
Brāhmaṇa (portion of the) Kāśika Saṃhitā, 99, 163, 165, 172, 177
— (portion of the) Maitrāyaṇi Saṃhitā, 163, 164, 172, 176, 177
— Śadvimśa, 134
— Saṃhitā, 101
— Śatapatha, 12, 25, 100, 103, 105, 107, 111, 117, 130, 132, 133, 134, 136, 137, 139, 141-152, 153-160, 163-170, 173, 174, 176, 177, 179, 180, 190, 194-196, 198, 199
— Taittiriya, 111
Brahmāvarta, 10, 11-12
Brahmi letters, 11
Bṛhadāraṇyaka Upaniṣad, 9
Bṛhaspati, 110
Bṛhaspatimitra, 14, 19
Bṛhatīs, 104, 158, 176, 177
Bronze age ware, 13
Buddha, 11, 26, 200
Buddhavacana, 200
Buddhaghosa, 113, 200-202
Bud-shaped arrow-heads, 47, 50
Buffalo, Indian domestic, 95
Bühler, 85 fn 1
Bull, 80-82, 85, 95, 123, 139-142, 144, 169, 175, 202, 203
Bunda, 47
Calf, 175
Cambay, gulf of, 3
Candakumāra, 202, 203
Candasāra, 202
Cane, 47
Cast coins, inscribed, 80, 84
— — uninscribed, 82, 83
Index

— inscribed cast, 80
— Kuśāna, 15
— Mitra, 20, 80, 84
— punch-marked, 20, 80, 81
— punch-marked silver, 81
— of the Magha Kings, 80
— silver, 81
— uninscribed cast, 83
— Copper, 82
— tribal, 83
Conical blade cross-section arrow-heads, 45
Coomāraswamy, A. K. 20, 76
Copper, 47
— inscribed cast coins, 84
Cows, 200
Crescent on hill, 82, 83
Cûdā, 187
Cullaniddesa, 200 fn 2
Cullavagga, 200
Culture, chalcolithic, 4, 58
— Harappan, 3-6, 10, 13
— Indian, 205
Cultural period I., 45
— Period II., 45, 48
— Period III., 45-48
— Period IV., 46
— Painted Grey Ware, 4
Cunningham, 25, 84, 85
Curd, 122
Dakṣa, 204
Dakṣinā, 110, 137, 138, 152, 198, 200, 201, 202
Dānavas, 204
Danḍāsana, 47
Darbha, 160
Darśāṇamāsa, 98, 136
Deccan, 10, 11, 58
Deer-horn, 47
Defences, Harappan, 41
Demetrius, 15
Deo, 7 fn 1
Devadatta, 202
Devalakṣma, 123, 151, 165
Devas, 204
Devatā, 130
Index

Dhanabhūti, 85
Dhīṣāya hearths, 189
Dhoṭi, 77
Dīkṣā, 103, 105 107, 119, 153, 154, 155, 191
Dishes, 57, 61, 69
— Grey Ware, 69
Dish-on-stand, 57, 62
Diṣyās, 176, 177, 178
Doab, Gangā-Yamunā, 6
Dogs, 116
Door-hook, 56
— ring, 55
Double-grooved, ivory and bone arrow-heads, 49
— stringed girdle, 77
— tanged arrow-heads, 45, 52
— tanged, iron arrow-heads, 52
Drapery, 77
Dravīṇodā, 185
Dravya, 130
Droṇacīrī, 131, 132
Drṣadvati, 10, 12
Dūrvā, 98, 166, 178
Dūrveṣṭakā, 162, 163, 167
Dutt, Bibhutibhusan, 138 fn 4
Dvipada, 99, 140, 141
Dvistanā, 150
Dvīyajus, 124, 163, 164, 166, 167, 170, 171

Ear-rings, 76
Eastern Punjab, 3, 8, 9
Eggeling, 113, 117, 133, 155, 157, 195, 197 fn.
Egypt, 3
Ekāha, 108, 137
Elephant, 80, 82, 83, 85, 123, 202
Epiphany, 116
Erāvati, 202
European, 116

Fa-Hien, 25
Falcon, 134
Feathers, 47
Figuines terracotta, 74-77, 79
Fire-cult, Indo-European, 107
— pan, 93, 98, 121, 136, 144, 148, 156
Fortification, 41

Galagatā rekhā, 121
Gangā, 6
Gangā-Yamunā doab, 6
Gangetic Valley, 6, 8, 10-15, 18, 21, 23, 45,
46, 59, 64, 66, 74, 81, 93, 122
Ganges basin, 9
Gārgī Sāhîhitā, 15, 109
Gārhapatya, 89, 98, 103-105, 119, 126, 136,
146, 152, 157, 159, 161, 186
Garland, 93
Gārmuta, 160
Gāthâ, 200, 203
Gauramāraṇya, 169
Gavampati, 203
Gavayamāraṇya, 169
Gavedhuka, 188
Germany, 116
Ghaggar Valley, 5, 6
Gharneṣṭaka, 101
Ghee, 122, 169, 188
Ghēṣa, 14, 19
Ghosh, A., 4, 5
Ghosh, N. N., 25
Ghoṣitārāma, 15, 21, 22, 37
— monastery, 26
Ghṛta, 144, 184
Girdle, double-stringed, 77
Goat, 123, 175
Goat-hair, 148
Goat's milk, 153
Goblet, Indus, 4
Goddess, 122
Godhūma, 160
Gomṛga, 110, 197
Gopatha Brāhmaṇa, 25, 191
Gordon 20, fn 3
Graha Oblations, 189
Greek invasion, 14, 15
— myths, 115
Greeks, 15, 16, 27
Grey Ware, 68
— — dishes, 69
Ghamedha, 136
Ghrya, 130
Grierson, 8, 9 fn 2.
Griffith, 146
Index

Grooves, 47
Guard-rooms, 35, 38, 40, 41, 74
Gupta, 74

Hāndī, 68, 70, 71
Hand-made figurines, 74
— hollow cylindrical body, 78
— terracotta figurines, 75
Harappa, 3, 4, 9, 58, 65
Harappan architecture, 6
— civilisation, 10
— culture, 3-5, 10, 13
— defences, 41
— influence, 5
— settlement, 3
Harīscandra, 114, 204
Harīsvāmin, 195
Hāriti, 79
Hastināpura, 9, 23, 45, 52, 58, 60, 62, 76
Haviryağṇas, 130
Havis, 129
Hawk, 116, 120, 134
— shaped altar, 124
Head of a snake, 122
He-goat, 98, 100, 107, 110, 123, 139-144, 146, 147, 169, 175
Hillebrandt, 112, 117
Himsā, 138
Hindon, 3, 6
Hinduism, 109
Hiranyakṣṭakā, 110, 163, 176, 177
Hoernle, 7, 8
Hollow cross, 30, 82, 83
Homa, 154
Honey 122, 168, 169, 188
Hoof of the horse, 148
Horn, arrow-heads of, 47
Hornless he-goat, 197
Horse, 80, 84, 85, 107, 108, 123, 139-142, 144-147, 169, 190, 198, 201, 202
Horse-hair, 178
— shoel, 91
Hotā, 204
Hotṛ, 110, 197, 198
Hotṛgaṇapah, 138
Hotṛkas, 198

Hubert, 129
Human figurines terracotta, 74
Hūṇa, 15, 21, 46
— conquest, 15, 16
Hūnārāja, 16, 21
— seals of, 37
Husk, 149
Hymn, Uttara-Nārāyaṇa, 199

Immigration, Indo-Aryan, 8
Incised Red Ware, 71
India, 8, 13
— central, 7, 8, 10
Indian culture, 205
— domestic buffalo, 95
— southern, 11
Indo-Aryan, 10, 14
— immigration, 8
— invasions, 7
— European, 113, 116, 129
— fire cult, 107
— Iranians, 116
Indra, 11, 12, 142, 205
Indra-Pūṣan, 192
Indratanvā, 184, 186
Indrayaṅgī, 81, 85
Indus civilization, 5, 14
— goblet, 4
— valley, 3, 8
Inscribed cast coins, 80, 84
— Pottery, 72
Inscription, kada, 25
Invasion, Alexander, 23
— Greek, 14, 15
— Indo-Aryan, 7
— Yavana, 15
Inverted taurine, 83
Iran, 7, 45, 47, 107
Iranian element, 10
— connection, 7
— contact, 14
Iron age, 14
— arrow-heads, 45, 47, 51
— double-tanged, 52
— Knife-blade, 52
— barbed, 52
— bud-shaped, 50  
Iron-rust, 148, 149  
— model of a serpent, 55, 122  
Iron-nail, 55  
Iron-rings, 48, 55  
Irregular rectangular arrow-heads, 47  
— ivory and bone arrow-heads, 50  
İşanmañdalah, 139  
İşakapaşu, 143  
İşakas, 143, 188  
İşi, 136  
İş, 138, 150  
Itvuttaka, 200  
Ivory, arrow-heads, 47, 48  

Jain, 113, 203  
Jainism, 9, 117, 129  
Jaipur, 4, 5 fn.  
Jámadagni, 166, 204  
Janaka, 9  
Janamejaya Parixiça, 12  
Janghâmâtri, 160  
Jartila, 160  
Jāta, 12, 13, 81, 202, 203  
— Khanđahāla, 202, 203  
— Vessañara, 203  
Javelins, 45, 48  
Jayaswal, K. P. 109  
Jha, G. N. 138 fn 3.  
Jhûnsî, 64  
Jînûta, 101, 186  
Jîyasattu, 204  
Jyoتضمن, 101, 104, 176, 177, 184  

Kabandhas 169  
Kàdâ Inscription, 25  
Kâfiri, 8  
Kâkinî, 81  
Kâkṣivat, 193  
Kâli Age, 109  
Kâlidâsa, 15  
Kalpa, 189  
Kâmpîla, 12  
Kane, 130 fn3.  
Kâniška, 15  
Kañkaçiti, 131, 132  

Kankar nodule, 92, 93, 95, 99, 118, 121, 122  
Kapardi, 132, 139 fn1.  
Karâhîs, 61  
Karavinda, 132, 139 fn2.  
Kârmukî, 156  
Kârito, 107  
Kârṣâpaña, 81  
Kârṣmarya, 98, 138, 162  
Kâṭhaka Samhîta, 101, 106, 164  
— — BrâhmañÇa, 99, 163, 172, 177  
KathásaritśaÇara, 114, 204  
Kâthiâwar, 3, 5, 6  
Kâtyâyana, 101, 104, 107, 117, 129, 150, 152, 154, 155, 157, 158, 163, 166, 168, 177, 180, 186, 193, 194, 195  
— Śrāvastī, 99, 100, 103, 105, 133, 142-146, 158-160, 163-165, 173, 176, 177, 179, 180, 183, 193, 194, 196, 199  
Kauśâmbi, 6ff. and passim.  
Kauśântaka UpâñÇad, 25  
Kauṭilya, 12, 13, 18, 47  
Keith, A. B. 10 fn 1., 103 fn 1., 106 fn 2., 107 fn 1., 112, 113, 116 fn 1., 117 fn 1., 129, 130, 147 fn 7.  
Keśi, 202  
Keśini, 202  
Khadirâ, 138, 193  
Khanḍahāla Jāta, 202, 203  
Khāravela, 129  
Kîmpuruṣa, 169  
Kings, Magha, 80  
— Mitra, 80  
King Vessañara, 203  
Knife-blade arrow-heads, 45, 52  
Knives, 45, 48, 55  
Knowledge of iron, 45  
Kokilā, 202  
Krṣṇājina, 146, 149, 156, 179  
Krṣṇājinoloma, 104, 148, 149  
Krûtīkâ, 104, 183  
Kṣattra, 102, 182, 188  
Kṣatriya, 102, 109, 147, 190, 192
Index

— Brahmaṇa (portion of) 163, 164, 172, 176, 177
Majumdar, R. C. 205
Mālavikāgīmitra, 15
Malwa, 11, 60, 62, 64
Man, 98, 107, 115, 123, 139, 144, 175, 197
Mandāleśṭakā, 101, 163, 176, 177, 183
Mantras, 100, 101, 107, 133, 146, 149, 151, 154, 155, 159, 163, 164, 165, 168, 171, 175
Manu, 9
Markaṭaka, 160
Marshall, 3, 21, 46, 51, 56
Māśa, 81, 140, 142, 160
Mā saṁtiśhipi, 195
Mauryan Period, 20, 23
Mauss, 129
Max Müller, 47, 115
Mayu, 169
Medhya, 103, 140-142, 144, 164
Meerut, 6, 45
Mehagaṇon, 6, 62
Men, 190
Menander, 15
Merchants, 202
Milk-cow, 175, 188
Mithuna plaque, 76
— coins, 20, 84
— kings, 14, 19, 20
— coins of, 80
Mitra, R. L. 117
Mitra-Varuṇa, 110, 189
Moat, 39
Mohen-ju-daro, 3, 4
Monastery of Ghoṣṭārāma, 26
Motāmachālli, 58, 61
Mother Goddess, 13, 74
Mould-made, 74
— terracotta figurine, 76, 93
Mudita, 202
Mughal, 25
Muñja, 146, 156, 160
— Trīṛta, 146
Muṣṭikaraṇa, 156
Mythical animal, 80, 83
Index

Nagnajit Gāndhāra, 107
Nails, 45, 48, 56
Naimittika, 130
Nākasada, 183, 185-187
Nakṣatraṇṭaka, 184
Nālandā, 200 fn 3.
Nandā, 202
Nārāca, 47
Narain, A. K. 15 fn1.
Naramedha, 204
Nārāśamāsas, 192
Nāsatya, 11
Navdatoli, 4, 6, 7, 10, 12, 14, 18, 23, 39, 52, 60, 66
Necklace, 76, 77
Nevasa, 68
Nikāyya, Aṅguttara, 200
— Saṃyutta, 200, 201
North India, 7, 8
Northern-black-polished-human head, 75
— Northern Black-polished, 13, 14, 18, 19, 20, 23, 31, 32, 33, 40, 45-84, 59, 60, 66-70
— — painted and incised, 72
Northern Punjab, 5
North-Western India, 11, 106
— region, 46
Nilagritva, 188
Nirakṣa, 200
Nirṛti, 188
Nisobha, 203
Nitya, 130
Nivāra, 160
Offering-stand, 93, 121, 122
Oldenberg, 117 fn 3.
Ore, 45
Oṣadhīs, 160
Ox, 175
Pāda, 151, 173
Pādamātṛi, 153
Pāda Vīmaṭātika, 81
Painted and incised Northern-Black-Polished Ware, 72
— Black-and-Red Ware, 70
— Grey Ware, 18, 31, 32, 39, 58, 59, 70, 95
— — Culture, 6, 7, 9, 10, 13, 14
— — Red Ware, 71
Pakistan, 23 fn 3.
Pakṣa, 121, 139
Pakṣāgra, 121, 139
Pakṣamadhyā, 121, 139
Palāśī, 105, 138, 148, 149, 157
Palāśī, 156
Pālī, 25
— Tripitaka, 200
Pañcacakāda, 183, 185, 186, 187
Pañcāṅga muṇḍa, 146
Pañcapiśa, 141
Pande, G. C. 9 fn 3.
Pānini, 12, 13, 81, 109, 172 fn 1.
Pantha Sakuna, 203
Pāpavasyasam, 147 fn 7.
Paramatthajotikā, 201, 201
Paricāyaciti, 131
Parivāra, 200 fn 3.
Pārśva, 11
Pārtha libations, 189
Paryagnikaraṇa, 117, 195
Paryagnikṛta, 110, 111, 195, 196
Pāṣa, 149
Pashṭu, 8
Paṣubandha, 136
Paṣupati, 188, 189
Paṣupurodāsa, 105, 119, 154, 155
Paṇi, 141, 142
Paṣa, 141, 142
Paṣaṇṭera, 100
Paṭaliputra, 15, 21
Patanjali, 15
Pathyāśvasti, 192, 203
Paurnāmāśe, 184, 185
People, Kuru-Pāṇcāla, 10
Person, bald-headed, 115
Pigott, Stuart, 3, 9
Plaque mithuna, 76
Post-Harappan, 58
Pottery, incised, 72
— Northern-Black-Polished Ware, 13, 14, 18-20, 23, 31, 32, 33, 40, 45-48, 59, 60, 60-67
Prādeśa, 93, 121, 145, 150
Prajāpati, 97, 106, 107, 110, 125, 134-136,
Index

141-144, 152, 153, 166, 170, 173, 174, 181, 182, 187, 191, 194, 197
Prākāra, 12, 13
Prakṛti, 134, 135
Pramāda, 106
Prāṇa, 152
Prāṇabhṛt, 124, 125, 163, 164, 166, 170-174, 176-178
Prāṇasādhana, 143
Prathasvatī, 165
Pratihāra king, 25
Praugaciti, 108, 131, 132
Pravargya ceremony, 171, 183
— Upasad ceremony, 175, 179, 182
Prāyaścitt, 156
Pre-Aryan, 9
Pre-Northern-Black-Polished Ware, 39, 40
Primeval Puruṣa, 106, 113
Princes, 202
Priyaṅgu, 160
Protii Kausurii Bindi, 25
Punaściti, 186
Punch-marked coins, 20, 30, 81
Punjab, 5-8, 10, 12, 18, 58
Puṇaka, 202
 Puṇamukha, 202
Pupphavati, 202
Pura, 12
Puraṇa, Bhāgavata, 114, 204
Puraṇas, 25
— Puraṇa, Vāyu, 114, 204
Puruṣa, 98, 121, 162, 175, 179, 182
Puruṣa, 97, 106, 120, 134, 135, 141-143, 146, 171, 190
— Anadäha, 146
Puruṣamedha, 15, 35, 87, 109, 111-117, 124, 130, 190, 191, 196, 199-205
— Nārāyana, 190
Puruṣa Nārāyaṇa, 190
— Nārāyaṇa litany, 191, 197, 198
— Prajāpati, 107, 114, 139
— Primeval, 106, 113
Puruṣasūkt, 106, 107, 113, 114, 116, 134, 142
Puru Varışa, 204
Puṣyamitra Śuṅga, 15

Queens, 202
Rājā, 191
Rājagiri, 202
Rājanya, 100, 102, 141, 143
Rājasthān, 3, 7, 18
Rājasūya, 98, 115, 126, 129, 130, 136, 191
Rāju, 149
Raṇjodā, 193
Raṇputānā, 8
Rākā, 99
Rākṣasas, 204
Ram, 107, 123, 139, 142, 144, 169, 175
Rāmāyaṇa, 11
Rampart 1, 27, 29, 31, 33
Rampart 2, 31, 33, 34, 62
Rampart 3, 34, 87
Rampart 4, 36, 46
Rampart 5, 37
Rampart 1, Subsidiary, 29, 38-40
Rampart II, Subsidiary, 32, 40
Rangpur, 3, 4, 6, 7, 18, 58
— II, 62, 64, 66
— III, 61, 65
Rasana, 121, 142
Raṇtrabhṛt, 101, 184, 185
Rathacakra, 108, 131, 132
Raychaudhuri, 15 fn 1.
Razors, 45
Rectangular cross-section, 48
— — arrow-heads, 45
— — arrow-heads—
Red clay, 75-79
— Ochre-Washed Ware, 6
— Ware, 60
— — incised, 71
Reeds, 47
Rekhā galagata, 121
Retahṣik, 124, 163, 164, 166, 167, 170, 171, 173, 174, 176, 178, 182, 183, 187
Revetment 1., 27-31
Revetment 2., 32-35
Revetment 3., 35
Ṛgveda, 12, 47, 100, 106, 107, 109-111, 114, 129, 134, 142, 144, 194
Rhombic cross-section, arrow-heads, 45
Index

— — Iron, 51
Rhys Davids, 12 fn 6.
Rice-husk fire, 159
Rohita, 114,
Rojdi, 4
Rosen, 114
Round cast, 80
Ṛṣis, 182
Ṛtavā, 105, 129, 163-165, 170-181, 184-187
Rudra, 99, 108, 188, 189, 198
Rukma, 156
Rūpar, 3-5, 10, 58
Śabarabhāṣya, 138
Sacrifice, Soma, 97, 106, 109, 136, 155, 161, 188-190
Ṣaḍaracakra, 81, 82
Sadās, 92, 123, 198
Ṣadvimśa Brāhmaṇa, 134
Saha, 181
Sahasrāśī puruṣāḥ, 168
Ṣaka-Kuśāṇa, 15, 16
Ṣaka-Pārthians, 15, 46
— — Terracotta, 15
Sākta, 15
Śākhā, 100, 116, 144, 151
Sakuna, 203
Śalākā, 47
Śāliśūka, 15
Sāman, 110, 130, 136, 188, 197
Śaṁbhavaparva, 204
Śāmidhena verses, 103
— Gārgī, 15, 109
— Kāṭhaka, 101, 106, 164
— Maitrāyaṇī, 101, 106, 132, 163
— Taittirīya, 10 and passim
Śamidha, 108, 156
Śaṁ, 138, 157
Śaṁmāyī, 156
Śaṁśīyayajus, 155
Śaṁśītra, 110, 198
Śaṁmāpāsa, 200
Samrāṭ, 191
Saṁskāra, 98, 154
— Ukha, 152
Saṁsthāpana, 195
— ceremony, 195
Saṁsthāpayati, 110
Saµmadraµgupta, 128 fn 1., 129
Saµhyācita, 131
Saµhyāpariṣa, 132
Saµyāṇī, 101, 163, 172, 173, 176, 180
Saµyutta Nikāya, 200, 201
Saṇḍhi, 20
Sand, 122
— of gravel, 148
Saṅgāṇa, 138
Saṅgīla, 107
Saṅkalia, H. D. 4, 7
Sankarṣa, 133
Saṅkhyāyanā, 109, 110-112, 197
— Śrāuta Śūtra, 100, 106, 112, 113, 115, 117, 138, 144, 155, 191, 192
Saṅkhyā System, 9
Sanskrit, 25
Śāra, 47
Śārvasati, 4, 5, 9, 10, 12, 135
— Valley, 9, 10
Śāratthapaṇkāsinī, 201
Śāri, 47
Śarka, 121, 148, 161, 165
Śarva, 47, 188
Śarvamedha, 191
Śarvarat, 191
Sastrī, Chinnaswami, 133
Sastrī, Shama, 12, 47
Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, 12, 25, 100, 103, 105, 107, 111, 117, 130, 132-134, 136, 137, 139, 141-152, 155-160, 163-170, 173, 174, 176, 177, 179, 180, 190, 194-196, 198, 199
Śatarudriya, 108, 188
Śatyāgīthā, 154, 193, 194, 196
— Śrāuta Śūtra, 100, 141, 179, 180, 185, 190, 191, 193, 195, 196, 199
Saugor, 21
Śauraseni, 7, 8
Savāniyā, 193
Śavitr, 145, 153, 193
Index

Savitri-offering, 104
Sāyaka, 47
Sāyanā, 47, 106, 121, 134, 140, 142, 144, 147-151, 155, 165, 170, 193
Sayuja, 101, 104, 163, 172, 173, 180
Schools of Yajurveda, 103, 151
Schrader, O, 12 fn 10, 115 fn 9, 116
Sealings, 85
Seals of Hūnapāla, 37
Seals of Toramāṇa, 37
Self perforated brick, 125
Sentry-boxes, 37
Serpent, 81
— iron-model of, 55
Settlements, Harappan, 3
Shafs, 47
Sharma, G. R. 15 fn 2, 25 fn 5.
Sheep-dung, 152
Sickles, 45, 48, 56
Śikya, 156
Silk threads, 197
Silver coins, 81
Silver money, 81
Silver Punch-marked coins, 81
Simla hills, 3
Śindhu, 15
Śiṅgāla, 202
Śiṅvālī, 99, 122, 149
Sircar, D. C. 15 fn 1., 21 fn 2.
Sites, Western Indian, 6, 7
Śiva, 205
Skandha, 204
Slags, 45
Śmaśana citi, 123, 131, 170
Snake, 170
Snake, iron model of, 122
Socket, 47
Socketed arrow-heads, 45-49, 52
— cross-section, 48
Śoḷasa Aṭṭhikavagigkāṇi, 200
Soma, 107, 110, 111, 130, 160, 161, 193, 204
— days, 191, 201
Somanātha, 6, 18, 58, 62, 64, 65
Somarājñī, 160, 161
Somavatī, 160, 161
Soma Sacrifice, 97, 106, 109, 136, 155, 161, 188-190
Somasaṁsthās, 130
Somayāga, 107, 138
— Āṅgas, 130, 138
South-east Asia, 205
Spears, 45, 48, 54
Spt, 102, 179-181
Square, 82
— Cast, 80
— cross-section, arrow-heads, 45, 51
Śrāuta, 130
— Śāstras, 10, 81, 105, 111, 122, 129, 151, 152, 177
— Āpastamba, 100, 101, 107, 130, 141, 143-145, 148, 152, 156-160, 176, 177, 179, 180, 183-186, 190-193, 195, 196, 199
— Baudhāyana, 100-102, 109, 137, 143, 146, 152, 163, 164, 166, 172, 173, 176, 177, 179, 180, 183, 185
— Kātyāyana, 99, 100, 103, 105, 133, 142-148, 158, 159, 160, 163-165, 173, 176, 179, 180, 183, 193, 194, 196, 199
— of Kṛṣṇa Yajurveda School, 147, 157
— Vaiśhānasa, 100, 101, 107, 141, 152, 157, 158, 160, 176, 177, 179, 180, 183, 185
— Vaitāna, 100, 106, 110, 113, 117, 191, 193
Śṛṣṭi, 179, 180, 182
Stanā, 150
Steads, 202
Steer, 175
Stoma, 180-182
Stomabhāgā, 183, 185-187
Stone, 148
Strings, 93
Subba Rao, 7 fn1.
Subsidiary Rampart 1, 29, 38-40
Subsidiary Rampart 2, 32, 40
Śuci, 174
Sūdādahās, 159, 179
Sudeva, 14, 19
Śūdra, 102, 109, 115, 141, 147, 182, 194
Sukapardā, 122, 149
Śukla, 194
— School, 103, 105, 148, 150, 152, 165, 169, 173, 177, 180, 185
Index

— Yajurveda, 99, 102, 110, 112, 148, 157, 176
— School, 98, 100, 101, 103-105, 116, 117, 133, 140, 141, 145, 146, 149, 157, 158, 160, 163
Śukra, 174
Sukurāśā, 122, 149
Śulba Sūtra, Āpastamba, 120, 132, 133, 137, 139
Sūlțānpūra, 65
Sun, 135
Suṇandā, 202
Sundarārāja, 133, 138
Suṅga, 14, 20, 85
Suparṇa, 133, 134
Suparṇāciti, 97, 132
Surāṁukha, 202
Surkhī, 35, 36
Sūtrakāra, 105, 141
Sūtras, 99, 100, 102, 106, 172, 177, 180, 185
— of Kṛṣṇa School, 100, 111, 140, 145, 157, 166, 177, 180
— Śukla Yajurveda, 100, 111, 166
— Taittirīya School, 145, 146, 148, 149, 155
Sutta-Nipāta, 113, 199, 200
Sutāya, 189, 191
Svarāt, 191
Svāstikā, 80, 82, 83
Svādāsā, 149
Śvāyamātrā, 98, 103, 121, 122, 125, 162-166, 171, 176-178, 185-188
Sword, 202
Śyāmaka, 160
Śyena, 97, 108, 120, 133, 134, 138, 139
Śyenaciti, 15, 87, 97, 108, 116, 120, 123, 131, 133-137, 203,
Śyeua rite, 137
Śyenayāga, 108, 134, 137, 138, 156, 203

Taittirīya Brāhmaṇa, 111
Taittirīya Saṁhitā, 10
— Brāhmaṇa, 100, 101, 105, 106, 108, 110, 111, 123, 137, 140, 141, 143, 145, 147, 149-152, 154-161, 163-167, 169, 170, 172, 175-177, 179, 182, 183, 185
Taittirīya School, 11, 98, 116, 126, 144, 147 148, 150, 160

Tarkhānavalā Derā, excavations of, 5
Tarn W. W., 15 fn 1.
Taurine, 81, 82
— inverted, 83
Taxila, 14, 21, 23, 46, 64
Taxila symbol, 82
Terracotta, animal figurines, 74
— female figurine, 93 122
— — Mould-made, 93
— — figurines Hand-made 77
— — Mould-made, 76
— human figurines, 74
— Śaka-parthians, 15
Thibaut, 138 fn 4.
Thietmar, 116
Three-bladed arrow-heads—Iron, 45, 54
Thunderbolt, 117
Tiger, 175
Tila, 160
Tilvaka, 108, 137, 138, 156
Tiny cast, 80
Toramāṇa, 16, 21, 37
Torque, 77
Tortoise, 118, 123, 169-171
Tower, 38
Tree in railing, 80, 82, 83, 85
Tribal coins, 83
Trident, 81
Triangular arrow-heads, 45
— cross-section arrow-heads—Iron, 52
Tripā, 197
Tripitakas, 25, 81
Tripūṇḍa, 151
Tripūṇḍavadrekhā, 151
Triratna, 76
Trīśūla, 93
Trīvṛtā munjā, 146
Trīṇa, 143
Tryālikhitā, 151, 165
Turā Kāvaṣeya, 107
Tvāṣṭṛ, 142
Tvāṣṭṛ, 130

Ubdhātataḥ-praugaciti, 132
Udgātā, 204
Udgātā, 110, 197, 198
Index

Udgātṛgāṇaḥ, 138
Udumbara, 98, 138, 159, 160, 162
Ujjain, 81
— Symbol, 80, 83-85
Ukhāsambharaṇa, 131
Ukhā, Samskāra, 152
Ukhyāgni, 157, 159
Ukhyā, 191
Ullīkāla-mūsāla, 162
Uninscribed cast coins, 83
— Copper, 82
University of Allahabad, 25
Upacāryacitī, 132
Upadhaiṇavīdhi, 132
Upānaha, 179
Upānisad, 9, 11, 25, 129, 191
Upaseni, 202
Upāsivarī, 101, 185
Upavasatha, 193
Urvashimātrī, 153
Uśtramārāṇya, 169
Utsanna, 106
Utsarga, 169
Uttara-Nārāyaṇa hymn 199
Uttarā Phalgunī 130
Uttara Pradesh 3, 6
Uttaravedi 89, 98, 120, 161

Vaiśāli, 62
Vaiśāvadevi, 104, 129, 172-174
Vaiśāvānara, 98, 105, 119, 155, 159, 167, 189
Vaiśāvānara Agni, 167
Vaiśāya, 100, 102, 141, 143, 147, 182
Vaitāṇā, 109, 111, 112, 198
— Śrāuta Sūtra 100, 106, 110, 113, 117, 191-193
Vaiṣajeyā, 98, 130, 136, 191, 200
Vaiṣajaranvīya, 189
Vaiṣjasaneyins, 105, 155

Vajira, 131, 138
Vaiṣjasaneya Saṁhitā, 105, 111, 146, 148, 149, 163, 165, 173, 177, 179, 180, 194
Vālakhilyā, 125, 176, 178, 179
Valmikīvarpaṇa, 103
Vanīvāhana, 157
Vapra, 12, 13
Varadattasuta Ānartiya, 144 fn.6
Varama, 11, 99, 108, 114, 142, 149
Varnadanta, 202
Vāsārāla, 193
Vāsīṣṭha, 166, 204
Vasordhārā, 189
Vasu, 153
Vātsapra, 156
Vatsas, 25
Vayasyā, 109, 172-174
Vāyu, 100, 143, 144
— Purāṇa, 114, 204
Vedikā, 88, 113, 119
Vemānikasūra, 202
Veṇu, 47, 145, 160
Vessantara Jātaka, 203
Vessels, 57, 64
Videha, 9
Vidīśā, 81
Vījāyā, 202
Vīkaṅkata, 138
Vīkāraṇī, 183, 185-187
Vīkṛtī, 134
Vimśatika, 81
Vinaśāna, 9
Vindaka, 203
Vindhyā plateau, 58
Virāja, 191, 163, 183, 185-187
Virā, 191
Virodha, 107
Vīśākha yūpa, 193
Vīṣṇukrama, 156
Vīṣṇu-steps, 98
Vīṣṇu-strides, 156
Vīṣṇu-vajroṭis, 98, 103, 124, 125, 152, 153, 163-165, 167, 170, 171, 176-178, 183, 185-187, 204
Vīṣvakarman, 142
Vīśvāmitra, 166
Vīśve-devas, 110
Index

Yāga, 130
Yajamāna, 104, 152
Yajña, 129
Yajñatanvā, 107, 184, 185
Yajurveda, 99, 106, 109-112, 117
Yajuṣmatī, 125, 161, 176, 177
Yama, 114, 140, 157, 197
Yamagāthā, 140
Yamunā, 3, 6, 8, 24, 25
Yasapāla, 25
Yava, 160
Yavana invasion, 15
Yaśodā, 184
Yuan Chwang, 25
Yugapurāṇa, 15, 109
Yūpa, 109, 112, 126, 137, 156, 161, 193, 194, 201
Yūpa, Viśākha, 193
Yūpa, Agniṣṭha, 110, 194, 196
Yūthapati, 203
Zebu of India, 88

Vṛūṭyas, 137, 138
Vṛūhi, 160
Vṛṣṭisani, 101, 104, 172-174, 184
Vulture, 133
Vyacasvari, 165
Vyāyāma, 58, 119, 145, 204
Vyūṣṭis, 179

Ware, Black-and-Red, 21, 39, 57, 59, 68
— Bronze Age, 13
— incised Red, 71
— Northern-Black-Polished painted and incised, 72
— painted Black-and-Red, 70
— Grey, 18, 19, 31
— Red, 71
— Pre-Northern Black-Polished, 39, 40
Watch-tower, 35, 40
Weber, 115, 117
Western India, 3, 5, 7, 8, 58, 66
— Indian sites, 6, 7
— Punjab (Pakistan), 3
— Uttar Pradesh, 5-7, 9, 58
Wheel, 80,
Wheeler, 3 fn 2., 6 fn 1., 13, 23 fn 2.
Wilson, 114
Winternitz, 10 fn 1., 11, 117 fn 3.
Worship of Sun, 199
Defences: northern wing
Defences: eastern wing
Excavations of the tower at the north-eastern corner of the defences
General View of the excavations (1957-59): the Šyenaciti in the foreground
Revetment 1 of the defences, original pavement and the blocking of the passage
PLATE 16

A. Original pavement and blocking of the passage through the defences

B. Plaster over Revetment 1
A. Revetment 1 and its repair (collapsed)

B. Mud-blocks over ancient humus
Revetments 2 and 3 of the defences
A. Slits in the walls of the passage

B. Stair 1
Flank-wall and blockings of the passages through the guard-rooms
A. Section across the moat, looking south-west

B. Section across the moat, looking south-east
A. Šyenaciti: right wing with its three parts, the scale demarcating the wing from the body

B. Section across the Šyenaciti
Section across the Śyenacitu: vertical scale against Uttaravedi, two-foot scale against Svayamāṭṛṇā and one-foot scale against tortoise-shell.
A. Section across Šyenaciti: scale against Uttaravedi

B. Šyenaciti: Vedikā 4 - Gārhapatiya
A. Synacti: bone of Zebu (humped cattle) on potsherds representing the initial rite Vasanara-Pasupodasa

B. The ash Dia with the portrayal of human sacrifice
A. The Ukhā

B. Śvayamātrāṇā within a ring of Prāṇabhṛt bricks in the first layer
A. Šyenaciti: human skull on the tail in the foreground

B. Human skull on the tail of the Šyenaciti
A. Šyenaciti: bones of elephant and domestic buffalo in the first layer

B. Šyenaciti: bones in the first layer
A. Syenaciti: jaw of ass and bone of goat in the first layer

B. Syenaciti: right ramus mandible with third molar tooth of Bos Bubalis (buffalo) in the centre of the second layer
A. Šyenaciti : bones in the third layer

B. Šyenaciti : human bones in the third layer
A. Šyenaciti: human skull in the third layer

B. Šyenaciti: human bone in the third layer
A. Syenaciti: human jaw in the third layer

B. Syenaciti: human jaw in the fourth layer
Arrow-heads: Ivory and Bone
Arrow-heads: Iron
Spears, javelins and miscellaneous iron antiquities
Terracotta figurines: mould-made
Coins: punch-marked and uninscribed cast, nos. 16, 17 and 18 (2/1)
Painted Grey ware; no. 4 (2/1)
1. (2/1) Painted Black-and-Red Ware; 2 (1/1), 3 and 4 (2/1) inscribed pottery
Central Archaeological Library,
NEW DELHI

Call No. 913.05426/SLDA

Author—Sharma, G.R.

Title—Excavations at
Kausambi 1957-59

Borrower No. Date of Issue Date of Return

“A book that is shut is but a block”

CENTRAL ARCHAEOLOGICAL LIBRARY
GOVT. OF INDIA
Department of Archaeology
NEW DELHI.

Please help us to keep the book clean and moving.